

Truro Lat-
Toronto University Library
Presented by

J. Saverford Esq

through the Committee formed in

The Old Country

to aid in replacing the loss caused by

The disastrous Fire of February the 14th 1890

A NEW EASY LATIN PRIMER.



F. HAVERFIELD,

+ LANCING COLLEGE +

SHOREHAM,

SUSSEX

Lab. Gr
F 7853n

A NEW EASY LATIN PRIMER.

BY

REV. EDMUND FOWLE,

AMESBURY HOUSE SCHOOL, BICKLEY, KENT,

AUTHOR OF

"Short and Easy Latin Book," "Short and Easy Greek Book,"
"Gods and Heroes," "Schoolboy's First Book of Easy Poetry,"
etc., etc., etc.

LONDON:

SWAN SONNENSCHN, LE BAS & LOWREY,
PATERNOSTER SQUARE.

1886.

7622
14/11/90

6

As boys are not over-careful in the use of Books, and as this New Easy Latin Primer should be constantly in the learner's hands, the several parts have been issued separately at One Shilling each.

Part I. Accidence.

„ II. Syntax.

„ III. Irregular Latin Verbs.

„ IV. Difficilliora—taking in the Gender and Peculiarities of the Substantive, etc., etc.

P R E F A C E .

THIS little Book is an attempt to supply a want that is still universally felt—a Latin Primer sufficiently full and yet sufficiently easy for our Preparatory and for the Lower Forms of our Public Schools.

It has been thought well to follow in many particulars the lines of the P. S. L. P.

AMESBURY HOUSE, BICKLEY, KENT.

January 13th, 1886.

* * * Certain matter will be found repeated in these pages, but this has been found necessary, so that each of the four parts, when published separately, may be complete in itself.

PART I. ACCIDENTENCE.

PART I. ACCIDENCE.

CONTENTS.

	PAGE		PAGE
1. Latin Alphabet	11	29. Participles	37
2. Parts of Speech	12	30. Regular Verbs Conjugated	37
3. Gender, Number, Case .	12	31. Tenses of Regular Verbs	
4. Parts of Speech explained	13	(Active)	38
5. Stem and Root	14	32. Tenses of Regular Verbs	
6. Substantives	15	(Passive)	40
7. Declension of Substan-		33. Imperative Mood (Active	
tives	16	and Passive)	42
8. Gender of the Substan-		34. Infinitive Mood (Active	
tive	18	and Passive)	43
9. Adjectives	20	35. Gerunds, Supines, Parti-	
10. Adjectives—Three Term..	21	ciples	44
11. Adjectives—Two Term. .	21	36. Irregular or Anomalous	
12. Adjectives—One Term. .	21	Verbs	45
13. Notes on the Adjectives .	22	37. Tenses in full of Irregular	
14. Numeral Adjectives . .	22	Verbs	46
15. Numerals	23	38. Deponent Verbs	48
16. Numerals (in full) . . .	24	39. Deponent Verb in full	
17. Comparison of Adjectives.	26	(Utor)	50
18. Irregular Comparisons .	27	40. Impersonal Verbs	52
19. Notes on Comparison . .	28	41. Defective Verbs	54
20. Comparison of Adverbs .	28	42. Quasi-Passive and Semi-	
21. Pronouns	29	Deponent Verbs	55
22. Declension of Pronouns .	30	43. Derived Verbs	56
23. Compounds of Relative		44. Adverbs	57
Pronouns, etc.	31	45. Prepositions	58
24. The Verb "Sum"	32	46. Conjunctions	59
25. The Verb	34	47. Interjections	59
26. Transitive and Intransi-		48. General Rules for the	
tive Verbs	34	Quantities of Latin	
27. Stem of the Verb	35	Words (Prosody)	60
28. Regular Verbs	36	49. Epitome.	62

NEW EASY LATIN PRIMER.

PART I. ACCIDENCE.

LATIN ALPHABET, etc.

The Latin Alphabet is the same as the English without *w*.

The letters have also two forms like the English: (*a*) the Capital or Ancient; (*b*) the Small or Modern.

The Alphabet also, as in English, is divided into:
(*a*) Vowels, (*b*) Consonants.

- a. Vowels* sound by themselves, and are: *a, e, i, o, u, y*.
- b. The Consonants* must be joined with Vowels to have any sound; as, *b* (*be*), *c* (*ce*), *f* (*ef*).

The *Consonants* again are subdivided into

- 1. Mutes. *b, c, d, g, k, p, q, t*.
- 2. Nasals. *m, n*.
- 3. Liquids. *l, r*.
- 4. Spirants. *f, h, j, s, v*.
- 5. Double. *x, z*, made up of *cs, ds*.

There are *six Diphthongs* (two vowels with a combined sound): *æ, œ, au*, in common use; *ei, eu, ui*, seldom used.

Latin is spelt by syllables, the quantity of which is long $\bar{}$, short $\acute{}$, or doubtful \circ.

The stops in Latin are the same as those used in English.

PARTS OF SPEECH.

The Parts of Speech are eight.

1. Substantive	}	declined.		5. Adverb	}	undeclined.
2. Adjective				6. Preposition		
3. Pronoun				7. Conjunction		
4. Verb				8. Interjection		

The Substantive, Adjective, Pronoun, Verb change their meaning by their endings. These changes are called *Flexions*, and in making these changes Nouns are said to be *declined*, Verbs *conjugated*. The other parts of speech, sometimes called Particles, have no flexions.

GENDER, NUMBER, CASE.

1. The Noun consists of *Substantive*, *Adjective*, and *Pronoun*. These have for the most part Gender, Number, and Case. There are

Three Genders:

(a) Masculine, (b) Feminine, (c) Neuter.

Two Numbers:

(a) Singular, a *table*; (b) Plural, *tables*.

Six Cases, known in English by their *signs*, in Latin by their endings or flexions.

<i>Nom.</i>	Answers	Who or what?
<i>Voc.</i>	Used in speaking to persons.	
<i>Acc.</i>	Answers	Whom or what?
<i>Gen.</i>	„	Of whom, of what, whose?
<i>Dat.</i>	„	To or for whom or what?
<i>Abl.</i>	„	By, with, or from whom, or what?

PARTS OF SPEECH EXPLAINED.

1. *The Noun Substantive* is the name of anything; as, a *pen*, *Cæsar*, *Corinth*. Names of persons and places are Proper Nouns—all others are Common Nouns.

2. *The Noun Adjective* is joined with a Substantive, to show the quality of the Substantive. Hence it is said to *qualify* a Substantive.—A *good king*; a *bad pen*.

3. *The Pronoun* is sometimes used instead of (pro) a noun. Hence its name. Sometimes it qualifies a Noun—*This* boy is the son of *that* good gentleman, and *he* is a good boy *himself*.

4. *The Verb* tells us

(a) What a thing or person *is*.—The boy *is* good.

(b) What a thing or person *does*.—The boy *loves*.

(c) What a thing or person *suffers*, i.e. what is being done to one.—The boy *is loved*.

5. *The Adverb* is added to a Verb or Adjective, or another Adverb, to qualify its meaning; as, The boy runs *quickly*.

6. *The Preposition*—from *præ* and *pono*, to *place before*, is placed before a Noun, to mark its relation to another word; as, The boy was hurt *by* the dog. The boy is *without* knowledge.

7. *The Conjunction* (from *cum*, *together*, and *jungo*, *to join*) joins together words and clauses; as, The boys *and* girls. Winter *or* summer. The dog bit the cat *and* ran away.

8. *The Interjection* (a word as it were thrown in among other words, from *inter*, *among*, and *jacio*, *to throw*) is an exclamation—*Lo!* it thunders!

STEM AND ROOT.

STEM.

The Stem of a word has been defined as "that part on which the changes of flexion are based," *i.e.*, it is that part of the word which remains after the variable endings have been taken away.

In Nouns the Stem is found by throwing away *rum* from the Genitive Plural of Declensions I., II., V., and *um* from the Genitive Plural of Declensions III., IV. Thus

The Stem of *Mensa* is *MensA*.

„ „ *Dominus* is *DominO*.

„ „ *Lapis* is *LapiD*.

The Stem of *Nubes* is *Nubi*.

„ „ *Gradus* is *GradU*.

„ „ *Dies* is *DiE*.

But before a Noun can be declined, when the last letter of the Stem is a vowel, as in *mensa*, *domino*, *nubi*, *gradu*, *die*, this vowel must be cast off, and the case-endings can then be added to what remains, which is called the Clipt Stem.

For all practical purposes the part of the Stem needful for declining a Substantive can be found by throwing away the Genitive Singular termination of the five declensions.

ROOT.

The Root of a word must not be confounded with its Stem. It is really that part which kindred words (words of one family) have in common. Thus in the words *acies*, *acus*, *acuo*, the common root is *ac*, sharp, but their Stems would be respectively *acie*, *acu*, *acu*.

SUBSTANTIVES.

A Noun Substantive is the name of anything ; as, a *pen*, *Cæsar*, *Corinth*.

There are five Declensions of Substantives, known by the ending of the Genitive case.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. æ (diphthong), Mensa, mensæ. | 3. is, Nubes, nubis. |
| 2. i, Dominus, domini. | 4. ūs, Gradus, gradūs. |
| 5. ei, Res, rei. | |

NOTES ON THE SUBSTANTIVES.

Peculiarities of the Substantives are given at length (pp. 168–183). We need only give here two or three simple notes.

1. Nom. and Voc. cases are alike in both numbers, excepting some of those of the Second Declension ; as, *dominus*, Voc., *domine* ; *filius*, Voc., *fili*.

2. In Neuter Nouns the Nom., Voc., and Acc. are alike in both numbers, and in the plural they end in *a*.

3. Some words of the Second Declension in *er* keep the *e* throughout ; as, *puer*, *pueri* : some drop it ; as, *magister*, *magistri*.

4. In the Third Declension note should be taken of *nubes*, *nubis*, which does *not* increase in the Genitive case, and *lapis*, *lapidis*, which does. Those which increase in the Genitive Singular have their Genitive Plural in *um* instead of *ium*, with exceptions.

5. Words of the Third Declension have in the nominative various terminations (or endings), as *nubes*, *lapis*, *opus*, *mare*. All other cases depend on the Genitive singular.

The following Substantives are declined (see over) :

Mensa, mensæ (f.), a table.	Lapis, lapidis (m.), a stone.
Dominus, domini, (m.), a lord.	Opus, operis (n.), a work.
Magister, magistri, (m.), a master.	Mare, maris (n.), the sea.
Regnum, regni (n.), a kingdom.	Gradus, gradūs (m.), a step.
Nubes, nubis (f.), a cloud.	Genu, genus (n.), a knee.
	Res, rei (f.), a thing.

DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

FIRST DECLENSION.

S. N. Mensā (f.)	<i>a table</i>	P. N. Mensæ (f.)	<i>tables</i>
V. Mensā	<i>O table</i>	V. Mensæ	<i>O tables</i>
A. Mensam	<i>table</i>	A. Mensas	<i>tables</i>
G. Mensæ	<i>of a table</i>	G. Mensarum	<i>of tables</i>
D. Mensæ	<i>to or for a table</i>	D. Mensis	<i>to or for tables</i>
A. Mensā	<i>by, with or from, a table</i>	A. Mensis	<i>by, with or from, tables</i>

SECOND DECLENSION.

S. N. Dominus (m.)	<i>a lord</i>	P. N. Domini (m.)	<i>lords</i>
V. Domine	<i>O Lord</i>	V. Domini	<i>O lords</i>
A. Dominum	<i>lord</i>	A. Dominos	<i>lords</i>
G. Domini	<i>of a lord</i>	G. Dominorum	<i>of lords</i>
D. Domino	<i>to or for a lord</i>	D. Dominis	<i>to or for lords</i>
A. Domino	<i>by, with or from, a lord</i>	A. Dominis	<i>by, with or from, lords</i>
S. N. Magister (m.)	<i>a master</i>	P. N. Magistri (m.)	<i>masters</i>
V. Magister	<i>O master</i>	V. Magistri	<i>O masters</i>
A. Magistrum	<i>master</i>	A. Magistros	<i>masters</i>
G. Magistri	<i>of a master</i>	G. Magistrorum	<i>of masters</i>
D. Magistro	<i>to or for a master</i>	D. Magistris	<i>to or for masters</i>
A. Magistro	<i>by, with or from, a master</i>	A. Magistris	<i>by, with or from, masters</i>
S. N. Regnum (n.)	<i>a kingdom</i>	P. N. Regna (n.)	<i>kingdoms</i>
V. Regnum	<i>O kingdom</i>	V. Regna	<i>O kingdoms</i>
A. Regnum	<i>kingdom</i>	A. Regna	<i>kingdoms</i>
G. Regni	<i>of a kingdom</i>	G. Regnorum	<i>of kingdoms</i>
D. Regno	<i>to or for a kingd:</i>	D. Regnis	<i>to or for kingdoms</i>
A. Regno	<i>by, with or from, a kingdom</i>	A. Regnis	<i>by, with or from, kingdoms</i>

THIRD DECLENSION.

S. N. Nubes (f.)	<i>a cloud</i>	P. N. Nubes (f.)	<i>clouds</i>
V. Nubes	<i>O cloud</i>	V. Nubes	<i>O clouds</i>
A. Nubem	<i>cloud</i>	A. Nubes	<i>clouds</i>
G. Nubis	<i>of a cloud</i>	G. Nubium	<i>of clouds</i>
D. Nubi	<i>to or for a cloud</i>	D. Nubibus	<i>to or for clouds</i>
A. Nube	<i>by, with or from, a cloud</i>	D. Nubibus	<i>by, with or from, clouds</i>

THIRD DECLENSION.

S. N. Lapis (m.)	<i>a stone</i>
V. Lapis	<i>O stone</i>
A. Lapidem	<i>stone</i>
G. Lapidis	<i>of a stone</i>
D. Lapidi	<i>to or for a stone</i>
A. Lapide	<i>by, with or from,</i> <i>a stone</i>

S. N. Opus (n.)	<i>a work</i>
V. Opus	<i>O work</i>
A. Opus	<i>work</i>
G. Operis	<i>of a work</i>
D. Operi	<i>to or for a work</i>
A. Opere	<i>by, with or from,</i> <i>a work</i>

S. N. Marē (n.)	<i>the sea</i>
V. Mare	<i>O sea</i>
A. Mare	<i>the sea</i>
G. Maris	<i>of the sea</i>
D. Mari	<i>to or for [the sea</i>
A. Mari	<i>by, with or from,</i>

P. N. Lapides (m.)	<i>stones</i>
V. Lapides	<i>O stones</i>
A. Lapides	<i>stones</i>
G. Lapidum	<i>of stones</i>
D. Lapidibus	<i>to or for stones</i>
A. Lapidibus	<i>by, with or from,</i> <i>stones</i>

P. N. Opera (n.)	<i>works</i>
V. Opera	<i>O works</i>
A. Opera	<i>works</i>
G. Operum	<i>of works</i>
D. Operibus	<i>to or for works</i>
A. Operibus	<i>by, with or from,</i> <i>works</i>

P. N. Maria (n.)	<i>the sea</i>
V. Maria	<i>O seas</i>
A. Maria	<i>the seas</i>
G. Marium	<i>of the seas</i>
D. Maribus	<i>to or for [the seas</i>
A. Maribus	<i>by, with or from,</i>

FOURTH DECLENSION.

S. N. Gradus (m.)	<i>a step</i>
V. Gradus	<i>O step</i>
A. Gradum	<i>a step</i>
G. Gradūs	<i>of a step</i>
D. Gradui	<i>to or for [a step</i>
A. Gradu	<i>by, with or from</i>

S. N. Genu (n.)	<i>a knee</i>
V. Genu	<i>O knee</i>
A. Genu	<i>a knee</i>
G. Genūs	<i>of a knee</i>
D. Genu	<i>to or for [a knee</i>
A. Genu	<i>by, with or from,</i>

P. N. Gradūs (m.)	<i>steps</i>
V. Gradūs	<i>O steps</i>
A. Gradūs	<i>steps</i>
G. Graduum	<i>of steps</i>
D. Gradibus	<i>to or for [steps</i>
A. Gradibus	<i>by, with or from,</i>

P. N. Genua (n.)	<i>knees</i>
V. Genua	<i>O knees</i>
A. Genua	<i>knees</i>
G. Genuum	<i>of knees</i>
D. Genibus	<i>to or for [knees</i>
A. Genibus	<i>by, with or from,</i>

FIFTH DECLENSION.

S. N. Res (f.)	<i>a thing</i>
V. Res	<i>a thing</i>
A. Rem	<i>a thing</i>
G. Rēi	<i>of a thing</i>
D. Rēi	<i>to, or for [a thing</i>
A. Re	<i>by, with or from,</i>

P. N. Res	<i>things</i>
V. Res	<i>O things</i>
A. Res	<i>things</i>
G. Rērum	<i>of things</i>
D. Rēbus	<i>to or for [things</i>
A. Rēbus	<i>by, with or from</i>

GENDER OF THE SUBSTANTIVE.

There are three Genders; a Substantive must be either (a) Masculine, (b) Feminine, (c) Neuter. Some also are Common, *i.e.* Masculine or Feminine.

We give two common General Rules:

I. Certain classes of things are of certain Genders.

<i>Masculine.</i>	Males. Months.	People. Winds.	Mountains (<i>most</i>). Rivers (<i>most</i>).
<i>Feminine.</i>	Females. Islands.	Countries (<i>most</i>). Cities and Trees (<i>most</i>).	
<i>Neuter.</i>	Indeclinable Nouns; as, fas, nefas, nihil.		
<i>Common.</i>	Words applicable to either sex; as, Conjux, <i>husband</i> or <i>wife</i> . Hostis, <i>an enemy</i> .		

II. Genders of Substantives are in a general way also known by the terminations in each Declension.

First. Feminine, in *a* and *e*; Masculine in *as* and *es*.

Second. Masculine, in *us* and *er*; Neuter in *um*.

Third. (a) *Masculine* terminations: *o*, *or*, *os*, *er*, *es*, increasing in gen., *ex* (not *x*).

(b) *Feminine* terminations: *is*, *as*, *aus*, *a* (not *ex*) *s* preceded by a consonant, *es* not increasing in genitive.

(c) *Neuter* terminations: *ar*, *ur*, *us*, *c*, *a*, *t*, *l*, *e*, *n*.

Fourth. Masculine in *us*; Neuter in *u*.

Fifth. Feminine.

But to these rules there are many exceptions (see pp. 158-167.)

GENDER OF THE SUBSTANTIVE.

EXCEPTIONS.

DECLENSION I.

Nouns in *a* denoting Males, are Masculine ; as, *poeta, a poet.*

So also are

Hadria, Adriatic Sea.

Scurra, a buffoon.

DECLENSION II.

A few in *us* are Feminine :

Alvus, the belly.

Humus, the ground.

Arctus, the Bear (constellation).

Pampinus, vine-leaf.

Carbasus, fine flax.

Pirus, a pear-tree. (a)

Colus, a distaff.

Sapphirus, a sapphire. (b)

Vannus, a winnowing fan.

A few in *us* are Neuter :

Pelagus, the sea.

*Vulgus, the common people
(generally).*

Virus, poison.

DECLENSION III.

Exceptions are numerous (see pp. 158-167).

DECLENSION IV.

A few in *us* are Feminine :

Acus, a needle.

Manus, the hand.

Anus, an old woman.

Nurus, a daughter-in-law.

Domus, a house.

Porticus, a portico.

Idūs (pl.), the Ides.

Socrus, a mother-in-law.

Tribus, a tribe.

DECLENSION V.

All are Feminine except *dies*, which is common in the Singular, but Masculine in the Plural, and *meridies, midday*, which is Masculine.

(a) And names of plants.

(b) And names of jewels.

ADJECTIVES.

A Noun Adjective qualifies a Substantive, as—

A <i>good</i> boy.	A <i>tall</i> tree.	A <i>happy</i> child.
A <i>bright</i> day.	<i>Cold</i> weather.	A <i>sad</i> state.

Adjectives are divided into *three* Classes; those which have in the Nominative

1. Three terminations. 2. Two terminations. 3. One termination.

1. Adjectives of three terminations end in

<i>us, a, um,</i>	as <i>bonus, bona, bonum, good.</i>
<i>er, a, um,</i>	as <i>tener, tenera, tenerum, tender.</i>
<i>er, is, e,</i>	as <i>acer, acris, acre, sharp.</i>

2. Adjectives of two terminations end in

<i>is, e,</i>	as <i>tristis, triste, sad.</i>
<i>or, us,</i>	as <i>melior, melius, better.</i>

3. Adjectives of one termination have various endings; as,

Felix,	<i>happy.</i>
Ingens,	<i>immense.</i>
Præstans,	<i>excellent.</i>

The following sample Adjectives are declined;—

Bonus	bona	bonum	<i>good.</i>
Tener	tenera	tenerum	<i>tender.</i>
Acer	acris	acre	<i>sharp.</i>
Tristis	triste	<i>sad.</i>	
Melior	melius	<i>better.</i>	
Felix	<i>happy.</i>		

ADJECTIVES OF THREE TERMINATIONS.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
S. N. Bonus	bonā	bonā	bonum
V. Bone	bona	bona	bonum
A. Bonum	bonam	bonam	bonum
G. Boni	bonæ	bonæ	boni
D. Bono	bonæ	bonæ	bono
A. Bono	bonā	bonā	bono

S. N. Tener	tenēra	-ērūm
V. Tener	tenera	-erum
A. Tenerum	teneram	-erum
G. Teneri	teneræ	teneri
D. Tenero	teneræ	tenero
A. Tenero	tenera	tenero

S. N. Acer	acris	acre
V. Acer	acris	acre
A. Acrem	acrem	acre
G. Acris	} all genders	
D. Acri		
A. Acri		

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
P. N. Boni	bonæ	bonæ	bona
V. Boni	bonæ	bonæ	bona
A. Bonos	bonas	bonas	bona
G. Bonōrum	-ārum	-ārum	-ōrum
D. Bonis	} all genders.		
A. Bonis			

P. N. Teneri	teneræ	tenera
V. Teneri	teneræ	tenera
A. Teneros	teneras	tenera
G. Tenerōrum	-rārum	-rōrum
D. Teneris	} all genders.	
A. Teneris		

P. N. Acres	acres	acria
V. Acres	acres	acria
A. Acres	acres	acria
G. Acrium	} all genders	
D. Acribus		
A. Acribus		

ADJECTIVES OF TWO TERMINATIONS.

	M. F.	N.
S. N. Tristis	triste	
V. Tristis	triste	
A. Tristem	triste	
G. Tristis	} all genders	
D. Tristi		
A. Tristi		

S. N. Melior	melius
V. Melior	melius
A. Meliorem	melius
G. Meliōris	} all genders
D. Meliori	
A. Meliore (i)	

	M. F.	N.
P. N. Tristes	tristia	
V. Tristes	tristia	
A. Tristes	tristia	
G. Tristium	} all genders	
D. Tristibus		
A. Tristibus		

P. N. Meliōres	meliōra
V. Meliores	meliora
A. Meliores	meliora
G. Meliorum	} all genders
D. Melioribus	
A. Melioribus	

ADJECTIVES OF ONE TERMINATION.

S. N. Felix (m. f. n.)	
V. Felix	
A. Felicem (m. f.) felix (n.)	
G. Felicis	
D. Felici	
A. Felici (rarely Felice)	

P. N. Felices (m. f.)	felicia (n.)
V. Felices	felicia
A. Felices	felicia
G. Felicium	} all genders
D. Felicibus	
A. Felicibus	

NOTES ON THE ADJECTIVE.

There are some Adjectives declined like *tener*, *tenera*, *tenerum*, which however drop the *e*, as—

Niger, nigra, nigrum, *black*.

There are eleven other Adjectives declined like *acer*. *Celer* keeps *e* before *r*. It has also *ium* in the Gen. Plural; *um* only when used of the ancient body-guard at Rome—*Celeres*, *Celerum*.

- | | | |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. Alacer, <i>lively</i> . | 5. Paluster, <i>marshy</i> . | 8. Saluber, <i>healthful</i> . |
| 2. Campester, <i>level</i> . | 6. Pedester, <i>pedestrian</i> . | 9. Silvester, <i>woody</i> . |
| 3. Celeber, <i>crowded</i> . | 7. Puter, <i>rotten</i> . | 10. Terrester, <i>earthly</i> . |
| 4. Equester, <i>equestrian</i> . | | 11. Volucer, <i>winged</i> . |

Adjectives of one termination have various endings—

rapax, *rapacious*. præstans, *excellent*. ingens, *immense*.

NUMERAL OR PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

There are some Adjectives which are however declined like *bonus* or *tener* or *niger*, excepting that they have no Voc. and make the Gen. Sing. to end in *ius* and the Dative in *i*. *Alius* also makes *aliud* instead of *alium* in the Neut. Sing.

Unus, <i>one</i> .	Uter, <i>which (of two)</i> .
Solus, <i>alone</i> .	Neuter, <i>neither (of two)</i> .
Totus, <i>whole</i> .	Alter <i>one (of two)</i> .
Ullus, <i>any</i> .	Nullus, <i>none</i> .
Alius, <i>one (of any number)</i> .	

The numeral Adjectives, *duo*, *two*; *tres*, *three*, are thus declined:

N. Duo	duæ	duo	N. Tres	tria
A. Duos (o)	duas	duo	A. Tres	tria
G. Duorum	-arum	-orum	G. Trium	
D. Duobus	-abus	-obus	D. Tribus	
A. Duobus	-abus	-obus	A. Tribus	

NUMERALS.

Numerals are divided into—

1. Cardinal numbers—those on which the other numbers hinge (*cardo, a hinge*) ; as, *unus, one* ; *duo, two*.
2. Ordinal numerals—denoting numerical rank (*ordo*) : *primus, first* ; *secundus, second*.
3. Distributive numerals—giving or *distributing* so many apiece or at each time. *Pueri scripserunt binas epistolas* : The boys wrote two letters apiece.
4. Numeral Adverbs—denoting the number of times anything happens or is done. *Puer bis locutus est* : The boy spoke *twice*.

The general rule for writing compound numbers is—

1. In numbers less than twenty.

- (a) Small number first, without *et*. *Tres decem* (13) (written as one word, *tredecim*).
- (b) Larger number first, with *et*. *Decem et tres* (13).
- (c) *Duo de viginti* (18). *Unde viginti* (19).

2. In numbers over twenty.

- (a) Just the reverse—small number with *et*.
Romulus reigned thirty-seven years : *Romulus regnavit septem et triginta annos*.
- (b) Larger numbers without *et*.
To men are assigned *thirty-two teeth* : *Dentes triceni bini viris attribuuntur*.

3. In numbers above one hundred the larger comes first, with or without *et*. *Centum (et) septem* (107).
4. The *thousands* are expressed by prefixing the numeral adverbs to *mille*, as, *bis mille, ter mille* (chiefly in poetry) ; or by prefixing the cardinals to *milia*, as, *duo milia, tria milia*.

N.B.—*Mille*, a thousand, is an indeclinable adjective. *Milia*, thousands, is a neuter plural substantive, and is declined like *maria* ; so that *duo milia hominum*=two thousand men.

NUMERALS.

CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTRIBUTIVES.	ADVERBS.
1. unus, -a, -um	primus, -a, -um	singuli, -æ, -a	semel
2. duo, -æ, -o	secundus (alter)	bini, -æ, -a	bis
3. tres, -ia	tertius	terni (trini), -æ, -a	ter
4. quatuor	quartus	quaterni, -æ, -a	quater
5. quinque	quintus	quini, -æ, -a	quinquies *
6. sex	sextus	seni, -æ, -a	sexies
7. septem	septimus	septēni, -æ, -a	septies
8. octo	octavus	octōni, -æ, -a	octies
9. novem	nonus	novēni, -æ, -a	novies
10. decem	decimus	deni, -æ, -a	decies
11. undecim	undecimus	undēni, æ, -a	undecies
12. duodecim	duodecimus	duodēni, -æ, -a	duodecies
13. tredecim	tertius decimus	terni deni, -æ, -a	tredecies
14. quattuordecim	quartus decimus	quaterni deni, -æ, -a	quaterdecies
15. quindecim	quintus decimus	quini deni, -æ, -a	quindecies
16. sedecim	sextus decimus	seni deni, -æ, -a	sedecies
17. septendecim	septimus decimus	septēni deni, -æ, -a	septiesdecies
18. duodeviginti	duodevicesimus	duodevīceni, -æ, -a	duodevicies
19. undeviginti	undevicesimus	undevīceni, -æ, -a	undevicies
20. viginti	vicesimus	vīceni, -æ, -a	vicies
21. unus et viginti	primus et vicesimus	" singuli, -æ, -a	semel et vices
22. duo "	alter	" bini, -æ, -a	bis "
23. tres "	tertius	" terni, -æ, -a	ter "
24. quattuor "	quartus	" quaterni, -æ, -a	quater "
25. quinque "	quintus	" quini, -æ, -a	quinquies "
26. sex "	sextus	" seni, -æ, -a	sexies "
27. septem "	septimus	" septēni, -æ, -a	septies "
28. duodetrīginta	duodetricesimus	duodetrīceni, -æ, -a	duodetrices
29. undetrīginta	undetricesimus	undetrīceni, -æ, -a	undetrices
30. trīginta	tricesimus	trīceni, -æ, -a	trices
40. quadraginta	quadragessimus	quadragēni, -æ, -a	quadragies
50. quinquaginta	quinquagesimus	quinquagēni, -æ, -a	quinquagies
60. sexaginta	sexagesimus	sexagēni, -æ, -a	sexagies

* It may be noted that another form is quinquiens, sexiens, etc.

CARDINALS.

70.	septuaginta
80.	octoginta
90.	nonaginta
100.	centum
101.	" et unus
102.	" duo
103.	" tres
104.	" quattuor
105.	" quinque
106.	" sex
107.	" septem
108.	" octo
109.	" novem
110.	" decem
111.	" undecim
112.	" duodecim
113.	" tredecim
114.	" quatuordecim
115.	" quindecim
116.	" sedecim
117.	" septemdecim
118.	" duodeviginti
119.	" undeviginti
120.	" viginti
200.	ducenti, -æ, -a
300.	trecenti, -æ, -a
400.	quadringenti, -æ, -a
500.	quingenti, -æ, -a
600.	sexcenti, -æ, -a
700.	septingenti, -æ, -a
800.	octingenti, -æ, -a
900.	nongenti, -æ, -a
1,000.	mille
2,000.	duo millia
100,000.	centum millia
1,000,000.	decies centum millia

ORDINALS.

septuagesimus
octogesimus
nonagesimus
centesimus
centesimus primus
" secundus
" tertius
" quartus
" quintus
" sextus
" septimus
" octavus
" nonus
" decimus
" undecimus
" duodecimus
" tertius decimus
" quartus decimus
" quintus decimus
" sextus decimus
" septimus decimus
" duodevicesimus
" undevicesimus
" vicesimus
ducentismus
trecentismus
quadringentesimus
quingentesimus
sexcentismus
septingentesimus
octingentesimus
nongentesimus
millesimus
bis millesimus
centies millesimus
decies centies millesimus

DISTRIBUTIVES.

septuageni, -æ, -a
octogeni, -æ, -a
nonageni, -æ, -a
centēni, -æ, -a
centeni singuli,
" bini
" terni
" quaterni
" quini
" seni
" septeni
" octoni
" noveni
" deni
" undeni
" duodeni
" terni deni
" quaterni deni
" quini deni
" seni deni
" septeni deni
" duodeviceseni
" undeviceseni
" viceseni
ducenties
trecenties
quadringenties
quingenties
sexcenties
septingenties
octingenties
nongenties
milles
bis milles
centies milles
decies centies milles

ADVERBS.

septuagies
octogies
nonagies
centies
centies semel
" bis
" ter
" quater
" quinquies
" sexies
" septies
" octies
" novies
" decies
" undecies
" duodecies
" tredecies
" quaterdecies
" quindecies
" sedecies
" septiesdecies
" duodevicies
" undevicies
" vicies
ducenties
trecenties
quadringenties
quingenties
sexcenties
septingenties
octingenties
nongenties
milles
bis milles
centies milles
decies centies milles

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives have three degrees of comparison :

- | | | |
|--------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. Positive. | 2. Comparative. | 3. Superlative. |
|--------------|-----------------|-----------------|

The comparative and superlative are, ordinarily, both formed from the positive.

The comparative is formed from the positive by changing *i* or *is* of the Gen. Singular into *ior* ; as,

Altus, <i>high</i>	Gen. alti	Comp. altior
Brevis, <i>short</i>	„ brevis	„ brevior

The superlative is formed from the positive by changing *i* or *is* of the Gen. Singular into *issimus* ; as,

Altus, <i>high</i>	Gen. alti	Sup. altissimus
Brevis, <i>short</i>	„ brevis	„ brevissimus

Adjectives however in *er* form their comparative *regularly*, but their superlative by adding *rimus* to the Nom. Singular ; as,

Pulcher, <i>beautiful</i>	pulcherrimus
Celer, <i>swift</i>	celerrimus

Six Adjectives in *lis*, though they form their comparative *regularly*, form their superlative by changing *is* into *lissimus* ; as, facilis, facilius, facillissimus—

Facilis, <i>easy</i> .	Similis, <i>like</i> .	Gracilis, <i>slender</i> .
Difficilis, <i>difficult</i> .	Dissimilis, <i>unlike</i> .	Humilis, <i>lowly</i> .

But other Adjectives in *lis* are Regular ; as,

Utilis	utilior	utilissimus.
--------	---------	--------------

IRREGULAR COMPARISONS.

Some Adjectives are compared quite irregularly, as in English, the comparative or superlative being obtained from other words long since unused or forgotten.

Bonus, <i>good</i>	melior	optimus
Malus, <i>bad</i>	pejor	pessimus
Magnus, <i>great</i>	major	maximus
Parvus, <i>small</i>	minor	minimus
Multus, <i>much</i>	plūs (neuter)	plurimus
Extērus, <i>outward</i>	exterior	{ extrēmus
Infērus, <i>low</i>	inferior	{ extimus
Supērus, <i>high</i>	superior	{ infimus and imus
		{ supremus
		{ summus
Posterus, <i>next-after</i>	posterior	{ postrēmus
Nequam, <i>worthless</i>	nequior	{ postūmus
Vetus, <i>old</i>	vetustior	nequissimus
Maturus, <i>ripe</i>	maturior	veterrimus
Egenus, <i>needy</i>	egentior	{ maturrimus
Providus, <i>provident</i>	providentior	{ maturissimus
Dives, <i>rich</i>	divitior or ditior	egentissimus
		providentissimus
		{ divitissimus or
		{ ditissimus
Senex, <i>old</i>	{ senior,	
	{ natu major }	natu maximus
Juvenis, <i>young</i>	{ junior,	
	{ natu minor }	natu minimus

There are a few others.

NOTES ON COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

1. The comparative of *multus* (*plus*) has no masc. or fem. gender in the Singular, but full Plur., though somewhat irregular. Nom. and Acc., *plures, plura*; Gen., *plurium*; Dat. and Abl., *pluribus*
2. Adjectives in *us* pure (i.e. *us* preceded by a vowel) use for comparison *magis* and *maxime*; as, *magis pius, maxime pius*; except those in *quus*; as, *antiquus, antiquior, antiquissimus*, and a few others.
3. Adjectives in *dicus, ficus, volus* change *us* of the positive into *entior* and *entissimus*; as, *magnificus, magnificentior, magnificentissimus*. *Oci*or, *swifter*, has no positive. Many Adjectives have a positive only.
4. There are some Adjectives which seem to spring from Prepositions.

Preposition.	Positive Adj.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<i>Ē, ex, out of</i>	<i>extērus, outside</i>	<i>extēriōr</i>	<i>extrēmūs (extīmūs)</i>
<i>Intrā, within</i>	—	<i>intēriōr</i>	<i>intīmūs</i>
<i>Sūpēr, above</i>	<i>sūpērus, high above</i>	<i>sūpēriōr</i>	<i>sūprēmūs (summūs)</i>
<i>Infrā, below</i>	<i>infērūs, deep below</i>	<i>infēriōr</i>	<i>infīmūs (īmūs)</i>
<i>Præ, before</i>	—	<i>priōr</i>	<i>primūs, first</i>
<i>Post, after</i>	<i>postērūs, next after</i>	<i>postēriōr</i>	<i>postrēmūs (postūmūs)</i>
<i>Citrā, on near side</i>	—	<i>cītēriōr</i>	<i>cītīmūs</i>
<i>Ultrā, beyond</i>	—	<i>ultēriōr</i>	<i>ultīmūs, last</i>
<i>Prōpē, near</i>	—	<i>prōpiōr</i>	<i>proxīmūs</i>
<i>Dē, down from</i>	—	<i>dētēriōr, worse</i>	<i>dētērrīmūs, worst</i>

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

Adverbs are also compared.

The positive Adverb, when derived from an Adjective, ends chiefly in *e* and *ter*; as, *digne, worthily*; *graviter, heavily*; so also *sæpe, often*.

The comparative Adverb is the same as the neuter of the comparative Adjective; as, *dignius, more worthily*; *gravius, more heavily*.

The superlative Adverb is like the superlative Adjective, only it ends in *e*; as, *dignissime, most worthily*; *gravissime, most heavily*; *sæpissime, most often*.

PRONOUNS.

There are eight kinds of Pronouns.

- | | |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1. Personal. | 5. Definitive. |
| 2. Reflexive. | 6. Relative. |
| 3. Possessive. | 7. Interrogative. |
| 4. Demonstrative. | 8. Indefinite. |

1. Personal Pronouns are :

1. Ego, *I*.
2. Tu, *thou*.

2. Reflexive :

Se (*sese*), *himself, herself, itself, themselves*.

3. Possessive :

- | | |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Meus, <i>mine</i> . | 4. Cujus, <i>whose</i> . |
| 2. Tuus, <i>thine</i> . | 5. Noster, <i>ours</i> . |
| 3. Suus, <i>his, hers, etc</i> . | 6. Vester, <i>yours</i> . |

4. Demonstrative :

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Is, <i>that, he, she, it</i> . | 3. Ille, <i>that (yonder)</i> . |
| 2. Hic, <i>this (near me)</i> . | 4. Iste, <i>that (near you)</i> . |

5. Definitive :

Idem, *same*.

Ipsē, *self*.

6. Relative :

Qui, *who or which*.

7. Interrogative :

Quis, *who or what ?*

8. Indefinite :

Quis (aliquis) *any one*.

DECLENSION OF PRONOUNS.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

S. N. Ego	P. Nos	S. N. Tu	P. Vos
A. Me	Nos	A. Te	Vos
G. Mei	Nostrum or i	G. Tui	Vestrum or i
D. Mihi	Nobis	D. Tibi	Vobis
A. Me	Nobis	A. Te	Vobis

REFLEXIVE PRONOUN.

N. (none)
A. Se
G. Sui
D. Sibi
A. Se

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

are declined like *bonus* or *niger*, except that *meus* makes *mi* in the Voc. Sing. Masc. *Tuus* and *suus* have no Vocative.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. Is, *that, he, she, it.*
2. Hic, *this (near me).*

3. Ille, *that (yonder, near him).*
4. Iste, *that (near you).*

S. N. Is	eñ	id
A. Eum	eam	id
G.	Ejus	
D.	Ei	
A. Eo	eā	eo

S. N. Hic	hæc	hoc
A. Hunc	hanc	hoc
G.	Hujus	
D.	Huic	
A. Hoc	hac	hoc

S. N. Ille	illā	illud
A. Illum	illam	illud
G.	Illius	
D.	Illi	
A. Illo	illā	illo

P. N. Ii (ei)	eæ	ea
Eos	eas	ea
Eorum	earum	eorum
	Iis or eīs	
	Iis or eīs	

Hi	hæ	hæc
Hos	has	hæc
Horum	harum	horum
	His	
	His	

Illi	illæ	illa
Illos	illas	illa
Illorum	illārum	illorum
	Illis	
	Illis	

Iste is declined like *ille*.

DEFINITIVE PRONOUNS.

Idem, *same.*

Ipse, *self.*

S. N. Idem	eadem	idem
A. Eundem	eandem	idem
G. Ejusdem		
D. Eidem		
A. Eodem	eādem	eodem

P. N. Eidem	eadem	eādem
A. Eosdem	easdem	eadem
G. Eorundem	earundem	eorundem
D. Iisdem or eisdem		
A. Iisdem or eisdem		

Ipse is declined like *ille*, excepting that in the Neut. Nom. and Acc. Sing. it makes *ipsum* instead of *ipsud*.

RELATIVE PRONOUN.

Qui, *who* or *which*.

S. N. Qui	quæ	quod	P. N. Qui	quæ	quæ
A. Quem	quam	quod	A. Quos	quas	quæ
G. Cujus			G. Quorum	quarum	quorum
D. Cui			D. Quibus or queis or quīs		
A. Quo	quā	quo	A. Quibus or queis or quīs		

The Interrogative Pronoun *quis*, and the Indefinite Pronoun *quis*, are mostly declined like *qui*, with some differences.

INTERROGATIVE.				INDEFINITE.			
Singular.				Singular.			
Nom.	Quīs	(quīs)	quīd }	Quīs	quā	quīd }	<i>any one.</i>
	Quī	quæ	quōd }	Quī	quæ	quōd }	
Acc.	Quem	quam	quīd }	Quem	quam	quīd }	
	Quem	quam	quōd }	Quem	quam	quōd }	
	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	
In the other forms as Relative.				In the other forms as Relative.			

Indefinite Plur., Nom., Quī, quæ, quā or quæ.

COMPOUNDS OF RELATIVE, INTERROGATIVE, AND INDEFINITE.

1. Quisnam, quidnam ; quīnam, quænam, quodnam, *who, what ?*
2. Ecquis (*for en-quīs*), ecquā, ecquīd ? Ecquī, ecquæ, ecquōd, *any one* (Interrogative.) So numquīs, siquīs, etc.
3. Aliquīs, āliquā, āliquīd ; Aliquī, āliquā, āliquōd, *some one*.
4. Quispiam, quæpiam, quippiam (quodpiam), *any one*.
5. Quisquam, quicquam ; Genitive, cūjusquam, etc., *any one at all*.
6. Quidam, quædam, quiddam (quoddam), *a certain one*.
7. Quicumquē, quæcumquē, quodcumquē, *whosoever, whatsoever*.
8. Quisquīs, *whosoever*, quidquīd, *whatsoever*.
9. Quivīs, quævīs, quidvīs (quodvīs), *any you will*.
10. Quilibēt, quælibēt, quidlibēt (quodlibēt), *any you please*.
11. Quisquē, quæquē, quicquē ; Quisquē, quæquē, quodquē, *each*. So Unusquisquē, ūnāquæquē, ūnumquicquē (-quodquē), *each one*.

THE VERB SUM.

Sum, es, esse, fui, futurus, *to be.*

Before other Verbs are given, it is necessary to know the verb SUM, which is called the Auxiliary or *helping Verb*, because it *helps* to conjugate the other verbs; as *Amatus sum* (p. 40). But when not used as an Auxiliary Verb it is called Copulative, *i.e.* it “*couples*” the subject to the complement; as, *Homo est mortalis*; *man is mortal.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.	
S. Sum	<i>I am</i>	Eram	<i>I was</i>
Es	<i>thou art</i>	Eras	<i>thou wast</i>
Est	<i>he is</i>	Erat	<i>he was</i>
P. Sumus	<i>we are</i>	Erāmus	<i>we were</i>
Estis	<i>ye are</i>	Eratis	<i>ye were</i>
Sunt	<i>they are</i>	Erant	<i>they were</i>
FUTURE SIMPLE.		PERFECT.	
S. Ero	<i>I shall be</i>	Fui	<i>I have been</i>
Eris	<i>thou wilt be</i>	Fuisti	<i>thou hast been</i>
Erit	<i>he will be</i>	Fuit	<i>he has been</i>
P. Erīmus	<i>we shall be</i>	Fuīmus	<i>we have been</i>
Eritis	<i>ye will be</i>	Fuistis	<i>ye have been</i>
Erunt	<i>they will be.</i>	Fuērunt	<i>they have been.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

FUTURE PERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
S. Fuero	<i>I shall have been</i>	Fueram	<i>I had been</i>
Fueris	<i>thou wilt have been</i>	Fueras	<i>thou hadst been</i>
Fuerit	<i>he will have been</i>	Fuerat	<i>he had been</i>
P. Fuērīmus	<i>we shall have been</i>	Fueramus	<i>we had been</i>
Fueritis	<i>ye will have been</i>	Fueratis	<i>ye had been</i>
Fuerint	<i>they will have been</i>	Fuerant	<i>they had been</i>

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.	
S. Sim	<i>I may be</i>	Essem vel Forem	<i>I</i>
Sis	<i>thou mayest be</i>	Esses vel Fores	<i>thou</i>
Sit	<i>he may be</i>	Esset vel Foret	<i>he</i>
P. Simus	<i>we may be</i>	Essemus vel Foremus	<i>we</i>
Sitis	<i>ye may be</i>	Essetis vel Foretis	<i>ye</i>
Sint	<i>they may be</i>	Essent vel Forent	<i>they</i>

} *might be*

PERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
S. Fuerim	<i>I may</i>	Fuissem	<i>I should</i>
Fueris	<i>thou mayest</i>	Fuisses	<i>thou wouldst</i>
Fuerit	<i>he may</i>	Fuisset	<i>he would</i>
P. Fuerimus	<i>we may</i>	Fuissemus	<i>we should</i>
Fueritis	<i>ye may</i>	Fuissetis	<i>ye would</i>
Fuerint	<i>they may</i>	Fuissent	<i>they would</i>

} *have been*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.		FUTURE SIMPLE.	
S. Es	<i>be thou</i>	S. Esto	<i>thou must be</i>
		Esto	<i>he must be</i>
P. Este	<i>be ye</i>	Estote	<i>ye must be</i>
		Sunto	<i>they must be</i>

VERB INFINITE.

Present and Imperfect	Esse	<i>to be</i>
Perfect and Pluperfect	Fuisse	<i>to have been</i>
Future	Fore vel Futurus esse	<i>to be about to be</i>
Future Participle	Futurus	<i>about to be</i>

No gerunds, supines, or Present Participle.

THE VERB.

Verbs are of various forms—

1. Regular as, *Amo, moneo, rego, audio.*
2. Irregular as, *Possum, volo, nolo, malo, etc.*
3. Deponent partly active, partly passive; as, *Loquor*, I speak,
p. 48.
4. Impersonal used in 3rd pers. sing. and infinitive mood; as,
Piget me, it grieves me.
5. Defective not having all their parts; as, *Inquam*, I say.
6. Quasi-passive, or semi-deponent—as, *fio*, I am made;
gaudeo, gavisus sum, I rejoice.

All of which will be mentioned in their proper places.

TRANSITIVE AND INTRANSITIVE VERBS.

Verbs are either—

1. Transitive; or, 2. Intransitive.

1. Transitive—

The word *transitive* is made up of two Latin words, *trans*, across, and *eo*, to go. For our present purpose it will signify *passing on*, and it means, when spoken of a Verb, that the action of the Verb *passes on* to the case which follows it—

I love the boys. I hit the table. I eat an apple.

Here it can be seen at once that *love, hit, eat* are transitive Verbs; that is, that there is an *action* in the Verb which passes on to the case.

2. Intransitive.

A Verb is intransitive, that is, *not* transitive (*in* meaning *not*) when there is no action in the Verb to *pass on*; as—

I stand. The tree grows. The bird flies.

Here it can be seen that in *stand, grows, flies* there is no action that will *pass on*.

There are some Verbs which are both transitive and intransitive; as
Doleo, I grieve, grieve for.

STEM OF THE VERB.

To conjugate a *Verb* a boy must know, not merely the Stem of the Present, but also that of the Perfect and Supine.

The Stem of the Present is found in the Imperative Mood ; except (1) in the *Third* Conjugation, where the final “e” must be cut off ; and (2) in Deponent Verbs, where *re* or *ere* must be thrown away. Thus the stem of

Amo is *Ama*.

Moneo is *Mone*.

Rego is *Reg-*

Audio is *Audi*.

Venor is *Vena*.

Vereor is *Vere*.

Utor is *Ut-*

Partior is *Parti*

The Stem of the Perfect of any Regular (*a*) Verb of

CONJUGATION I. is found by adding *v* to the Stem of the Present ;
as, *Ama*, *amav*.

CONJUGATION II. is found by changing *e* of the Stem of the Present
into *u* ; as, *Mone*, *monu*.

CONJUGATION IV. is found by adding *v* to the stem of the Present ;
as, *Audi*, *audiv*.

The Stem of the Perfect in Conjugation III. is so irregular that it can only be found by consulting a dictionary.

The Stem of the Supine of any Regular (*a*) Verb is found by adding *t* to the Stem of the Present in Conjugations I., IV. ; as, *ama*, *amat* ; *audi*, *audit*. In Conjugations II., III., the Stem of the Supine is so irregular that the Verb should be looked out.

We add here the Tenses, etc., formed from the different Stems.

From Stem of Present.	From Stem of Perfect.	From Stem of Supine.
Present Act. and Pass.	Perfect Act.	Supines
Future Simple A. and P.	Future Perfect Act.	Participle Fut. Act.
Imperf. Act. and Pass.	Pluperfect Act.	Infinitive Fut. Pass.
Imperat. Act. and Pass.	Infinitive Perfect Act.	Participle Perf. Pass.
Infin. Pres. Act. and Pass.		Perfect Pass.
Gerund and Gerundive		Future Perf. Pass.
Participle Pres. Act.		Pluperfect Pass.
		Infinitive Perf. Pass.

(a) We say *Regular* Verbs, for many are irregular, and it would be beyond the scope of the present manual to enter into the various irregularities.

THE REGULAR VERBS.

Regular Verbs have

4 Conjugations.	2 Numbers.
2 Voices.	6 Persons (generally).
4 Moods.	3 Gerunds.
6 Tenses.	2 Supines.
4 Participles.	

THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

are known by the ending of the Infinitive Mood.

1. Has *ā* long before *re* ; as, *amāre*, to love.
2. Has *ē* long before *re* ; as, *monēre*, to advise.
3. Has *ē* short before *re* ; as, *regēre*, to rule.
4. Has *i* long before *re* ; as, *audire*, to hear.

TWO VOICES.

1. Active.
2. Passive.

FOUR MOODS.

1. Indicative.
2. Conjunctive.
3. Imperative.
4. Infinitive.

SIX TENSES.

1. Present.
2. Future Simple.
3. Imperfect.
4. Perfect.
5. Future Perfect.
6. Pluperfect.

Each tense, in Indicative and Conjunctive Mood, has two Numbers, and three Persons in each Number.

The Imperative has Number and Person, but the latter incomplete.

The Infinitive has neither Number nor Person.

THREE GERUNDS.

1. Nom. or Acc. in *dum* ; as, *amandum*, loving.
2. Genitive in *di* ; as, *amandi*, of loving.
3. Dat. or Abl. in *do* ; as, *amando*, for or by loving.

TWO SUPINES.

1. Supine in *um* ; as, *amatum*, to love.
2. Supine in *u* ; as, *amatu*, to be loved, or in loving.

PARTICIPLES.

There are four Participles :

1. Present in *ans* or *ens* ; as, *amans*, *loving* ; *monens*, *advising*.
2. Participle in *dus* (known as the Gerundive) ; as, *amandus*, *to be*,
that is to be, or *that must be loved*.
3. Perfect in *us* ; as, *amatus*, *loved*, or *having been loved*.
4. Future in *rus* ; as, *amaturus*, *going to love*, *about to love*.

These Participles are also classed in another way :

Two Active. 1. Present in *ans* or *ens*.

2. Future in *rus*.

Two Passive. 1. Perfect in *us*.

2. Participle in *dus*.

THE REGULAR VERBS CONJUGATED.

	(To love.)	(To advise.)	(To rule.)	(To hear.)
1st Pers. Pres.	Amo	Moneo	Rego	Audio
2nd Pers. Pres.	Amas	Mones	Regis	Audis
Inf. Pres.	Amāre	Monēre	Regēre	Audīre
Perf.	Amavi	Monui	Rexi	Audivi
Gerund in dum	Amandum	Monendum	Regendum	Audiendum
„ di	Amandi	Monendi	Regendi	Audiendi
„ do	Amando	Monendo	Regendo	Audiendo
Supine in um	Amātum	Monitum	Rectum	Auditum
„ u	Amatu	Monitu	Rectu	Auditu
Part. Pres.	Amans	Monens	Regens	Audiens
„ Fut.	Amaturus	Moniturus	Recturus	Auditurus

This long form may be much shortened.

1st Pers. Pres.	Amo	Moneo	Rego	Audio
Inf. Pres.	Amāre	Monēre	Regēre	Audīre
Perf.	Amavi	Monui	Rexi	Audivi
Supine in um	Amātum	Monitum	Rectum	Auditum

SHORT FORM FOR PASSIVES.

1st Pers. Pres.	Amor	Monēor	Regor	Audior
Inf. Pres.	Amari	Monēri	Regi	Audiri
Part. Perf.	Amatus	Monitus	Rectus	Auditus
Gerundive	Amandus	Monendus	Regendus	Audiendus

TENSES OF THE REGULAR VERBS—ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.		CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.	
<i>Present.</i>		<i>Present.</i>	
S. Amo	I love	S. Amem	I may
Amas	thou lovest	Ames	thou mayest
Amat	he loves	Amet	he may
P. Amāmus	we love	P. Amemus	we may
Amatis	ye love	Ametis	ye may
Amant	they love	Ament	they may
S. Moneo	I advise	S. Moneam	I may
Mones	thou advisest	Moneas	thou mayest
Monet	he advises	Moneas	he may
P. Monēmus	we advise	P. Moneamus	we may
Monetis	ye advise	Moneatis	ye may
Monent	they advise	Moneant	they may
S. Rēgo	I rule	Regam	I may rule
Regis	thou rulest	Audiam	I may hear
Regit	he rules	like Moneam.	
P. Rēgimus	we rule		
Rēgitis	ye rule		
Regunt	they rule		
S. Audio	I hear		
Audis	thou hearest		
Audit	he hears		
P. Audimus	we hear		
Auditis	ye hear		
Audiunt,	they hear		
<i>Imperfect.</i>		<i>Imperfect.</i>	
S. Amābam	I was	S. Amarem	I might
Amabas	thou wast	Amares	thou mightest
Amabat	he was	Amaret	he might
P. Amābamus	we were	P. Amaremus	we might
Amabatis	ye were	Amaretis	ye might
Amabant	they were	Amarent	they might
Monēbam	I was advising	Monerem	I might advise
Regēbam	I was ruling	Regerem	I might rule
Audiēbam	I was hearing	Audirem	I might hear
like Amābam.		like Amarem	
<i>Perfect.</i>		<i>Perfect.</i>	
S. Amāvi	I have	S. Amarem	I might
Amavisti	thou hast	Amares	thou mightest
Amavit	he has	Amaret	he might
P. Amavimus	we have	P. Amaremus	we might
Amavistis	ye have	Amaretis	ye might
Amaverunt	they have	Amarent	they might
Anavēre }		Monerem	I might advise
Monūi	I have advised	Regerem	I might rule
Rexi	I have ruled	Audirem	I might hear
Audiivi	I have heard	like Amarem	
like Amāvi.			

INDICATIVE MOOD.		CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.	
<i>Future Simple.</i>		<i>Perfect.</i>	
S. Amābo Amabis Amabit, P. Amābimus Amābitis Amābunt	<i>I shall thou wilt he will we shall ye will they will</i>	S. Amāverim Amāveris Amāverit P. Amāverimus Amāveritis Amāverint	<i>I may thou mayest he may we may ye may they may</i>
Monebo like Amābo.	<i>I shall advise</i>	Monuerim Rexerim Audiverim like Amāverim.	<i>I may have advised I may have ruled I may have heard</i>
S. Regam Reges Reget P. Regēmus Regetis Regent	<i>I shall thou wilt he will we shall ye will they will</i>	S. Amāvissem Amāvisset Amāvisset P. Amāvissemus Amāvissetis Amāvisset	<i>I should thou wouldst he would we should ye would they would</i>
Audiam like Regam.	<i>I shall hear</i>	Monuissim Rexissim Audivissim like Amāvissem.	<i>I should have advised I should have ruled I should have heard</i>
<i>Future Perfect.</i>		<i>Pluperfect.</i>	
S. Amāvero Amāveris Amāverit P. Amāverimus Amāveritis Amāverint	<i>I shall thou wilt he will we shall ye will they will</i>	S. Amāvissem Amāvisset Amāvisset P. Amāvissemus Amāvissetis Amāvisset	<i>I should thou wouldst he would we should ye would they would</i>
Monuero Rexero Audivero like Amāvero.	<i>I shall have advised I shall have ruled I shall have heard</i>	Monuissim Rexissim Audivissim like Amāvissem.	<i>I should have advised I should have ruled I should have heard</i>
S. Amāveram Amāveras Amāverat P. Amāveramus Amāveratis Amāverant	<i>I had thou hadst he had we had ye had they had</i>	S. Amāvissem Amāvisset Amāvisset P. Amāvissemus Amāvissetis Amāvisset	<i>I should thou wouldst he would we should ye would they would</i>
Monueram Rexeram Audiveram like Amāveram.	<i>I had advised I had ruled I had heard</i>	Monuissim Rexissim Audivissim like Amāvissem.	<i>I should have advised I should have ruled I should have heard</i>

TENSES OF THE REGULAR VERBS—PASSIVE VOICE,

INDICATIVE MOOD.		CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.	
Present.		Present.	
S. Amor	<i>I am</i>	S. Amer	<i>I may</i>
Amaris (re)	<i>thou art</i>	Amaris (re)	<i>thou mayest</i>
Amatur	<i>he is</i>	Ametur	<i>he may</i>
P. Amamur	<i>we are</i>	P. Amemur	<i>we may</i>
Amamini	<i>ye are</i>	Amemini	<i>ye may</i>
Amantur	<i>they are</i>	Amentur	<i>they may</i>
}		}	
loved		be loved	
S. Amabar	<i>I was</i>	S. Monear	<i>I may</i>
Amabaris	<i>thou wert</i>	Monearis (re)	<i>thou mayest</i>
Amabatur	<i>he was</i>	Moneatur	<i>he may</i>
P. Amabamur	<i>we were</i>	P. Moneamur	<i>we may</i>
Amabamini	<i>ye were</i>	Moneamini	<i>ye may</i>
Amabantur	<i>they were</i>	Moneantur	<i>they may</i>
}		}	
being loved		be advised	
Monebar	<i>I was being, etc.</i>	S. Regar	<i>I may be, etc.</i>
Regabar	<i>I was being, etc.</i>	Audiar	<i>I may be, etc.</i>
Audiebar	<i>I was being, etc.</i>		<i>like Monear.</i>
	<i>like Amabar.</i>		
}		}	
Perfect.		Imperfect.	
S. Amatus sum	<i>I</i>	S. Amarer	<i>I</i>
Amatus es	<i>thou</i>	Amareris (re)	<i>thou</i>
Amatus est	<i>he</i>	Amaretur	<i>he</i>
P. Amati sumus	<i>we</i>	Amaremur	<i>we</i>
Amati estis	<i>ye</i>	Ameremini	<i>ye</i>
Amati sunt	<i>they</i>	Amarentur	<i>they</i>
}		}	
have been loved		might be loved.	
Monitus sum	<i>I have been, etc.</i>		
Rectus sum	<i>I have been, etc.</i>		
Auditus sum	<i>I have been, etc.</i>		

Monēter, Regēter, Audirer,
like Amarer.

INDICATIVE MOOD.		CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.	
<i>Future Simple.</i>		<i>Perfect.</i>	
S. Amabor	I	S. Amatus sim	I
Amaberis (re)	thou	Amatus sis	thou
Amabitur	he	Amatus sit	he
P. Amabimur	we	Amati simus	we
Amabimini	ye	Amati sitis	ye
Amabuntur	they	Amati sint	they
Monebor <i>I shall be, etc.</i> like Amabor.		Monitus sim <i>I may, etc.</i> Rectus sim <i>I may, etc.</i> Auditus sim <i>I may, etc.</i> like Amatus sim.	
S. Regor		S. Amatus essem	
Regēris (re)	Amatus esses		
Regetur	Amatus esset		
P. Regemur	we	Amati essemus	we
Regemini	ye	Amati essetis	ye
Regentur	they	Amati essent	they
Audiar <i>I shall be, etc.</i> like Regar.		Monitus essem Rectus essem Auditus essem like Amatus essem.	

may have been loved

might have been loved

shall or will have been loved

had been loved

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
Ama	<i>love thou</i>	Amare	<i>be thou loved</i>
Amate	<i>love ye</i>	Amamini	<i>be ye loved</i>
Mone	<i>advise thou</i>	Monere	<i>be thou advised</i>
Monete	<i>advise ye</i>	Monemini	<i>be ye advised</i>
Rege	<i>rule thou</i>	Regere	<i>be thou ruled</i>
Regite	<i>rule ye</i>	Regimini	<i>be ye ruled</i>
Audi	<i>hear thou</i>	Audire	<i>be thou heard</i>
Audite	<i>hear ye</i>	Audimini	<i>be ye heard</i>

FUTURE SIMPLE.

Amato	<i>thou must love</i>	Amator	<i>thou must be loved</i>
Amato	<i>he must love</i>	Amator	<i>he must be loved</i>
Amatote	<i>ye must love</i>		
Amanto	<i>they must love</i>	Amantor	<i>they must be loved</i>
Moneto	<i>thou must advise</i>	Monetor	<i>thou must be advised</i>
Moneto	<i>he must advise</i>	Monetor	<i>he must be advised</i>
Monetote	<i>ye must advise</i>		
Monento	<i>they must advise</i>	Monentor	<i>they must be advised</i>
Regito	<i>thou must rule</i>	Regitor	<i>thou must be ruled</i>
Regito	<i>he must rule</i>	Regitor	<i>he must be ruled</i>
Regitote	<i>ye must rule</i>		
Regunto	<i>they must rule</i>	Reguntor	<i>they must be ruled</i>
Audito	<i>they must hear</i>	Auditor	<i>thou must be heard</i>
Audito	<i>he must hear</i>	Auditor	<i>he must be heard</i>
Auditote	<i>ye must hear</i>		
Audiunto	<i>they must hear.</i>	Audiuntor	<i>they must be heard</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

ACTIVE.

Present and Imperfect	Amāre	<i>to love</i>
Perfect and Pluperfect	Amavisse	<i>to have loved</i>
Future	Amaturus esse	<i>to be about to love</i>
Present and Imperfect	Monēre	<i>to advise</i>
Perfect and Pluperfect	Monuisse	<i>to have advised</i>
Future	Moniturus esse	<i>to be about to advise</i>
Present and Imperfect	Regere	<i>to rule</i>
Perfect and Pluperfect	Rexisse	<i>to have ruled</i>
Future	Recturus esse	<i>to be about to rule</i>
Present and Imperfect	Audire	<i>to hear</i>
Perfect and Pluperfect	Audivisse	<i>to have heard</i>
Future	Auditurus esse	<i>to be about to hear</i>

PASSIVE.

Present and Imperfect	Amari	<i>to be loved</i>
Perfect and Pluperfect	Amatus esse	<i>to have been loved</i>
Future	Amatum iri	<i>to be about to be loved</i>
Present and Imperfect	Moneri	<i>to be advised</i>
Perfect and Pluperfect	Monitus esse	<i>to have been advised</i>
Future	Monitum iri	<i>to be about to be advised</i>
Present and Imperfect	Regi	<i>to be ruled</i>
Perfect and Pluperfect	Rectus esse	<i>to have been ruled</i>
Future	Rectum iri	<i>to be about to be ruled</i>
Present and Imperfect	Audiri	<i>to be heard</i>
Perfect and Pluperfect	Auditus esse	<i>to have been heard</i>
Future	Auditum iri	<i>to be about to be heard</i>

GERUNDS, SUPINES, PARTICIPLES.

There are three Gerunds :

1. Ending in *dum*.
2. Ending in *di*.
3. Ending in *do*.

N. A. Amandum *loving*
 G. Amandi *of loving*.
 D. A. Amando *for or by loving*

N. A. Monendum *advising*
 G. Monendi *of advising*
 D. A. Monendo *for, by, advising*

N. A. Regendum *ruling*
 G. Regendi *of ruling*
 D. A. Regendo *for or by ruling*

N. A. Audiendum *hearing*
 G. Audiendi *of hearing*
 D. A. Audiendo *for or by hear-
 ing*

There are two Supines :

1. Supine in *um*.
2. Supine in *u*.

Amatum *to love*
 Amatu *to be loved*

 Monitum *to advise*
 Monitu *to be advised*

 Rectum *to rule*
 Rectu *to be ruled*.

 Auditum *to hear*
 Auditu *to be heard*.

There are four Participles :

ACTIVE.

Present in *ans* or *ens*.
 Future in *rus*.

PASSIVE.

Perfect in *us*.
 Participle in *dus*,—Gerundive.

ACTIVE.

Amans *loving*
 Amaturus *about to love*

 Monens *advising*
 Moniturus *about to advise*

 Regens *ruling*.
 Recturus *about to rule*

 Audiens *hearing*
 Auditurus *about to hear*

PASSIVE.

Amatus *loved*
 Amandus *meet to be loved*

 Monitus *advised*.
 Monendus *meet to be advised*

 Rectus *ruled*
 Regendus *meet to be ruled*

 Auditus *heard*
 Audiendus *meet to be heard*.

IRREGULAR OR ANOMALOUS VERBS.

The following Verbs are called Irregular or Anomalous,

Possum	<i>I am able.</i>
Volo	<i>I am willing.</i>
Nolo	<i>I am unwilling.</i>
Malo	<i>I am more willing.</i>
Fero	<i>I bear.</i>
Fio	<i>I am made.</i>
Eo.	<i>I go.</i>

IRREGULAR VERBS CONJUGATED.

1st Pers. Pres.	Possum	Volo	Nolo	Malo
2nd Pers. Pres.	Potes	Vis	Nonvis	Mavis
Inf.	Posse	Velle	Nolle	Malle
Perf.	Potūi	Volui	Nolui	Malūi
Gerund in <i>dum</i>	—	Volendum	Nolendum	Malendum
„ <i>di</i>	—	Volendi	Nolendi	Malendi
„ <i>do</i>	—	Volendo	Nolendo	Malendo
Supine in <i>um</i>	—	—	—	—
„ <i>u</i>	—	—	—	—
Part. Pres.	—	Volens	Nolens	Malens
Fut.	—	—	—	—

1st Pers. Pres.	Fero	Fio	Eo
2nd Pers. Pres.	Fers	Fis	Is
Inf.	Ferre	Fieri	Ire
Perf.	Tuli	Factus sum	Ivi
Gerund in <i>dum</i>	Ferendum		Eundum
„ <i>di</i>	Ferendi		Eundi
„ <i>do</i>	Ferendo		Eundo
Supine in <i>um</i>	Latum		Itum
„ <i>u</i>	Latu		Itu
Part. Pres.	Ferens		Iens (euntis)
Fut.	Latūrus		Iturus

ANOMALOUS OR IRREGULAR VERBS.

PRESENT.		FUTURE.		PERFECT.	
<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Conjunctive.</i>	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Conjunctive.</i>
S. Possum	Possim	S. Potero	Poturo	S. Potui	Potuerim
Potes	Possis	Poteris	Poteris	Potuisti	Potueris
Potest	Possit	Poterit	Poterit	Potuit	Potuerit
P. Possumus	Possimus	P. Poterimus	Potuerimus	P. Potuimus	Potuerimus
Potestis	Possitis	Poteritis	Poteritis	Potuistis	Potueritis
Possunt	Possint	Poterunt	Poterint	Potuērunt or ēre	Potuerint
<hr/>		<hr/>		<hr/>	
S. Volo	Velim	S. Volam	Voluro	Volui	Voluerim
Vis	Velis	Voles	Volueris	Nolui	Noluerim
Vult	Velit	Volet	Voluerit	Malui	Maluerim
P. Volumus	Velimus	P. Volemus	Voluerimus	Tuli	Tulerim
Vultis	Velitis	Voletis	Volueritis	Ivi	Iverim
Volunt	Velint	Volent	Voluerint	} <i>like Potui</i>	
<hr/>		<hr/>		} <i>like Potuerim</i>	
<hr/>		<hr/>		<hr/>	
<hr/>		<hr/>		<hr/>	
				PLUPERFECT.	
S. Nolo	Nolim	Nolam	Noluro	S. Potueram	Potuissim
Nonvis	Nolis	Malam	Maluro	Potueras	Potuisses
Nonvult	Nolit	Feram	Tulero	Potuerat	Potuisset
P. Nolimus	Nolimus	Fiam	Ivero	P. Potueramus	Potuissimus
Nonvultis	Nolitis			Potueratis	Potuissetis
Nolunt	Nolint		<i>like Volam and Voluro.</i>	Potuerant	Potuissent

PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Conjunctive.</i>	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Conjunctive.</i>	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Conjunctive.</i>
S. Malo Mavis Mavult Malumus Mavultis Malunt	Malim Malis Malit Malimus Malitis Malint	S. Poteram Poteram Poterat P. Poteramus Poteratis Poterant	Possem Posses Posset Possemus Possetis Possent	Volueram Nolueram Malueram Tuleram Iveram	Voluissem Noluissem Maluissem Tuluissem Ivessim
				<i>like Potueram</i>	<i>like Potuissem</i>
S. Fio Fis Fit P. — — Fiunt	Fiam Fias Fiat Fiamus Fiatis Fiunt	S. Volebam Volebas Volebat P. Volebamus Volebatis Volebant	Vellem Velles Vellet Vellemus Velletis Vellent		
S. Fero Fers Fert Ferimus Fertis Ferunt	Feram Feras Ferat Feramus Feratis Ferant	Nolebam Malebam Ferebam Fiebam Ibam	Nollem Mallet Ferrem Fierem Irem		
		<i>like Volebam</i>	<i>like Vellem.</i>		
<p>N.B.—These tenses of <i>to</i> are put out of order to get all the tenses into two pages, and are printed in Italics to make them more noticeable.</p>					
PRESENT OF <i>EO</i> .		FUTURE OF <i>EO</i> .			
S. <i>Eo</i> <i>Is</i> <i>It</i> P. <i>Imus</i> <i>Itis</i> <i>Eunt</i>	<i>Eam</i> <i>Eas</i> <i>Eat</i> <i>Eamus</i> <i>Eatis</i> <i>Eant</i>	S. <i>Ibo</i> <i>Ibis</i> <i>Ibit</i> P. <i>Ibimus</i> <i>Ibitis</i> <i>Ibunt</i>	<i>Ivero</i> <i>Iveris</i> <i>Iverit</i> <i>Iverimus</i> <i>Iveritis</i> <i>Iverint</i>		

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>		<i>Future.</i>			
Noli	Nolite	Nolito	Nolito	Nolitôte	Nolunto
Fer	Ferte	Ferto	Ferto	Fertote	Ferunto
Fi	Fite				
I	Îte	Îto	Îto	Îtôte	Eunto

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present and Imperfect.</i>		<i>Perfect and Pluperfect.</i>	
Posse	<i>to be able</i>	Potuisse	<i>to have been able</i>
Velle	<i>to be willing</i>	Voluisse	<i>to have been willing</i>
Nolle	<i>to be unwilling</i>	Noluisse	<i>to have been unwilling</i>
Malle	<i>to be more willing</i>	Malluisse	<i>to have been more, etc.</i>
Ferre	<i>to bear</i>	Tulisse	<i>to have borne</i>
Fieri	<i>to be made</i>		
Ire	<i>to go</i>	Ivisse	<i>to have gone</i>

DEPONENT VERBS.

There are some verbs called Deponent—from *de* and *pono*, I lay aside, or lay down,—which lay aside the Active Form. They may be variously described :

1. They mostly look like a Passive Verb, but are not ;
2. They are partly Active, and partly Passive ;
3. They have, chiefly, a Passive Form and an Active meaning.

Thus *Venor*, to hunt, looks like a Passive Verb, but as the meaning is *I hunt*, and not *I am hunted*, it may be known to be Deponent.

Deponent Verbs take no particular case after them. Some are Active, and are followed by the Accusative case, as *Vereor*, I fear ; or by some other case, as *Utor*, I use, which takes an Ablative ; *Misereor*, I pity, which takes a Genitive. Some also are Intransitive, and take no case, as *Morior*, I die.

In conjugating a Deponent Verb, it will be seen that they also take of the nature of an Active Verb by having Gerunds and Supines.

They also have four Participles, two (Pres. and Fut.) Active in form and sense; one (Perf.) Passive in form, but *generally* Active in sense; and the Gerundive.

Particular notice must be taken of the meaning of the Perfect Participle of a Deponent Verb, *venatus, veritus, usus, partitus*, the English of which is, *having hunted, having feared, having used, having divided*; whereas if it were the Passive Participle of an Active Verb it would be *hunted, having been hunted*, etc. There is indeed no such convenient Latin Participle as *having loved, having advised*, etc., in Active Verbs.

DEPONENT VERBS CONJUGATED.

	1st Conj. (To hunt.)	2nd Conj. (To fear.)	3rd Conj. (To use.)	4th Conj. (To divide.)
1st Pers. Pres.	Venor	Vereor	Utor	Partior
2nd Pers. Pres.	Venāris	Verēris	Utēris	Partīris
Inf. Pres.	Venāri	Verēri	Uti	Partīri
Perf.	Venātus sum	Verītus sum	Usus sum	Partītus sum
Ger. in dum	Venandum	Verendum	Utendum	Partiendum
„ di	Venandi	Verendi	Utendi	Partiendi
„ do	Venando	Verendo	Utendo	Partiando
Gerundive	Venandus	Verendus	Utendus	Partiendus
Supine in um	Venātum	Verītum	Usum	Partītum
„ u	Venatu	Verītu	Usu	Partītu
Part. Pres.	Venans	Verens	Utens	Partiens
„ Perf.	Venatus	Verītus	Usus	Partītus
„ Fut.	Venaturus	Veriturus	Usurus	Partitūrus

SHORTER FORM.

1st Pers. Pres.	Venor	Vereor	Utor	Partior
Inf. Pres.	Venari	Vereri	Uti	Partiri
Part. Perf.	Venatus	Veritus	Usus	Partitus
Gerundive	Venandus	Verendus	Utendum	Partiendus

CONJUGATION OF THE DEPONENT VERB UTOR, I use (THIRD).
VERB FINITE.

Present Tense.	INDICATIVE MOOD. <i>I use</i> S. Utör Utē-ris (rē) Utätür Pl. Utimür Utimīni Utuntür <i>thou usest</i> <i>he uses</i> <i>we use</i> <i>ye use</i> <i>they use</i>	CONJUNCTIVE MOOD. <i>I may</i> Utär Utä-ris (rē) Utätür Utämür Utāmīni Utantür <i>thou mayst</i> <i>he may</i> <i>we may</i> <i>ye may</i> <i>they may</i>	IMPERATIVE MOOD. Utērē Utimīni Utötör Utötör Utuntör <i>use thou</i> <i>use ye</i> <i>thou</i> <i>he</i> <i>they</i>
Future Simple.	S. Utär Utē-ris (rē) Utätür Pl. Utēmür Utēmīni Utentür <i>I shall</i> <i>thou wilt</i> <i>he will</i> <i>we shall</i> <i>ye will</i> <i>they will</i>	Utär Utä-ris (rē) Utätür Utämür Utāmīni Utantür <i>I might</i> <i>thou mightest</i> <i>he might</i> <i>we might</i> <i>ye might</i> <i>they might</i>	Utötör Utötör Utuntör <i>must use</i> <i>thou</i> <i>he</i> <i>they</i>
Imperfect.	S. Utēbär, Utēbä-ris (rē) <i>I was</i> Utēbätür Pl. Utēbämür Utēbāmīni Utēbantür <i>thou wast</i> <i>he was</i> <i>we were</i> <i>ye were</i> <i>they were</i>	Utērē Utērē-ris (rē) Utērätür Utērämür Utērēmīni Utērëntür <i>I might</i> <i>thou mightest</i> <i>he might</i> <i>we might</i> <i>ye might</i> <i>they might</i>	Utuntör <i>use</i> <i>thou</i> <i>he</i> <i>they</i>

Perfect.	<p>S. Usūs sum <i>I used</i> Usūs es <i>thou usedst</i> Usūs est <i>he used</i> P. Usī sūmūs <i>we used</i> Usī estīs, <i>ye used</i> Usī sunt <i>they used</i></p>	<p>Usus sim <i>I may</i> Usus sis <i>thou mayst</i> Usus sit <i>he may</i> Usi simūs <i>we may</i> Usi sitīs <i>ye may</i> Usi sint <i>they may</i></p> <p><i>have used</i></p>	<p>VERB INFINITIVE.</p> <p>Inf. Pres. Imp. Utī, <i>to use</i> Inf. Perf. Plup. Usus essē, <i>to have used</i> Inf. Fut. Usūrūs essē, <i>to be about to use</i></p>
Future Perfect.	<p>S. Usus ērō <i>I shall</i> Usus ērīs <i>thou wilt</i> Usus ērit <i>he will</i> P. Usi ērīmūs <i>we shall</i> Usi ēritīs <i>ye will</i> Usi ērunt <i>they will</i></p> <p><i>have used</i></p>		<p>Ger. Nom. Ac. Utendum, <i>using</i> Ger. Gen. Utendī, <i>of using</i> Ger. Dat. Abl. Utendō, <i>for or by using</i> Sup. in um Usum, <i>to use</i> Sup. in u Usū, <i>in using, or to be used</i></p>
Pluperfect.	<p>S. Usus eram <i>I had</i> Usus erās <i>thou hadst</i> Usus erāt <i>he had</i> P. Usi erāmus <i>we had</i> Usi erātīs <i>ye had</i> Usi erant <i>they had</i></p> <p><i>used</i></p>	<p>Usus essem <i>I should</i> Usus essēs <i>thou wouldst</i> Usus essēt <i>he would</i> Usi essēmūs <i>we should</i> Usi essētīs <i>ye would</i> Usi essent <i>they would</i></p> <p><i>have used</i></p>	<p>Part. Pres. Utens, <i>using</i> Part. Fut. Usūrūs, <i>about to use</i> Part. Perf. Usūs, <i>having used</i> Gerundive Utendūs, <i>to be used</i></p>

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Impersonal Verbs are those which have no Personal Pronoun as Subject, and are used only in the Third Person Singular (Ind. and Conj.) and in the Infinitive Mood.

It hails, grandinat.

It vexes me, me piget.

The greater number of the Impersonal Verbs are of the second conjugation. We give those most commonly used.

CONJUGATION I.

Delectat, it delights.

Tonat, it thunders.

Juvat, it delights.

Fulgurat, it lightens.

Constat, it is evident.

Grandinat, it hails.

CONJUGATION II.

Oportet, it behoves.

Pudet, it shames.

Licet, it is lawful.

Decet, it becomes.

Pœnitet, it repents.

Liquet, it is clear.

Dedecet, it is unseemly.

Tædet, it disgusts.

Attinet, it relates.

Piget, it irks.

Miseret, it moves pity.

Pertinet, it belongs.

Libet, it pleases.

CONJUGATION III.

Accidit, it happens.

Pluit, it rains.

Contingit, it befalls.

Lucescit, it dawns.

Ningit, it snows.

Vesperascit, it grows late.

CONJUGATION IV.

Convenit, it suits.

Evenit, it turns out.

Expediit, it is expedient.

IRREGULAR.

Interest, it imports.

Refert, it concerns.

The Impersonal Verbs may be arranged also according to the case they are constructed with. The following are used with the Accusative Case—

Decet.	Oportet.
Dedecet.	Piget.
Delectat.	Pœnitet.
Juvat.	Pudet.
Miseret.	Tædet.

The following are used with the Dative Case—

Libet.	Accidit.	Convenit.
Licet.	Contingit.	Expedi.
	Evenit.	

Some of these Impersonal Verbs, however, are constructed with *ad* and the Accusative, *e.g.* *attinet* and *pertinet*, while others, *in addition to an Accusative of the person, have a Genitive as well*, as *piget*, *pudet*, etc. So we may sum up the case-construction of these Impersonal Verbs thus:—

Those which require

- a. Accusative of Object : *oportet*, *decet*, etc.
- b. Dative of the Object : *libet*, *licet*, etc.
- c. *Ad* with Accusative : *attinet*, *pertinet*, etc.
- d. A Genitive with an Accusative, *piget*, *pudet*, etc.

To these we may add *interest* and *refert*, which admit a Genitive unless it is necessary to use a pronoun ; when, *in place of the Genitive*, we use *meâ*, *tuâ*, *suâ*, *nostrâ*, *vestrâ*, agreeing with *re*. 129 (III. a).

The Impersonals—

Fulgurat, <i>it lightens</i> ,	Pluit, <i>it rains</i> ,	Vesperascit, <i>it gets late</i> ,
Tonat, <i>it thunders</i> ,	Grandinat, <i>it hails</i> ,	Ningit, <i>it snows</i> ,
	Luscescit, <i>it dawns</i> ,	

are of course not used with any Personal or other Object.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Irregular or Anomalous Verbs (see pp. 45–48) are those which have for the most part the usual tenses, but are irregular as regards the formation of some of these tenses; as—

Possum, *I am able.*
 Volo, *I am willing.*
 Nolo, *I am unwilling.*
 Malo, *I prefer.*
 Fero, *I bear.*
 Fio, *I am made.*
 Eo, *I go.*
 Queo, *I am able.*

But *Defective Verbs* are those which want some of the usual parts of a Verb, and may be divided into—

1. Those which have no Tenses derived from the Present stem, though they have the English of the Present; as—

Cœpi, *I have begun* (Present-Past)
 Odi, *I hate.*
 Memini, *I remember.*

2. Those which have Perfect without Supine, and those which have neither Perfect nor Supine; as, Tremo, *I tremble*, which has no Supine, and Mitesco, *I grow mild*, which has no Perfect or Supine.

3. Verbs defective in various forms; as—

Aio, <i>I say.</i>	Inquam, <i>I say.</i>
Quæso, <i>I entreat.</i>	Fari, <i>to speak.</i>

Imperatives: Apage, *begone*; cedo, *give here*; have, salve, *hail*; age, *come*; vale, *farewell*.

QUASI-PASSIVE AND SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS.

Quasi-Passive Verbs are those which unite an Active form with a Passive meaning ; as—

Exulo, *I am banished.*
 Fio, *I am made.*
 Liceo, *I am put to auction.*
 Vapulo, *I am beaten.*
 Veneo, *I am on sale.*

SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS

(1) are, first, those which have an Active Present but a Perfect of Passive form (Active meaning) ; as—

Audeo, <i>I dare.</i>	Perfect, Ausus sum, <i>I dared.</i>
Fido, <i>I trust.</i>	„ Fisis sum, <i>I trusted.</i>
Gaudeo, <i>I rejoice.</i>	„ Gavisus sum, <i>I rejoiced.</i>
Soleo, <i>I am wont.</i>	„ Solitus sum, <i>I was wont.</i>

(2) Those which have an Active Perfect with DepONENT Perfect Principle ; as—

Present.	Perfect.	Perfect Participle.
Juro, <i>I swear.</i>	Juravi, <i>I swore.</i>	Juratus, <i>having sworn.</i>
Ceno, <i>I sup.</i>	Cenavi, <i>I supped.</i>	Cenatus, <i>having supped.</i>
Prandeo, <i>I dine.</i>	Prandi, <i>I dined.</i>	Pransus, <i>having dined.</i>

So nupta, *wedded* ; potus, *having drunk*, and some others.

DERIVED VERBS.

Derived Verbs are divided into—

1. Frequentative. 2. Inceptive. 3. Desiderative.

1. *Frequentative* Verbs express repeated or intenser action, and are of the *First* Conjugation, and end in *to* or *so*, or *ito*, *itor*.

The principal Frequentative Verbs are :

Canto	<i>sing.</i>	Hæsito	<i>stick fast.</i>
Capto	<i>catch up.</i>	Lectito	<i>gather often.</i>
†Curso	<i>run hither & thither.</i>	Merso	<i>dip in.</i>
Cursito	<i>run hither & thither.</i>	Minitor	<i>threaten.</i>
Clamito	<i>cry aloud.</i>	Pulso	<i>strike.</i>
Dicto	<i>say often.</i>	†Rogito	<i>ask often.</i>
Dictito	<i>say often.</i>	Salto	<i>dance.</i>
Gesto	<i>bear</i>	†Ventito	<i>come often.</i>

These are all conjugated regularly; *-äre*, *-avi*, *-atum*, except those marked †, which have no perfect or supine ; but

Minitor, *-äri*, *-atus sum*, is deponent.

2. *Inceptive* Verbs (sometimes called *Inchoative*) express beginning of action, and are of the *Third* Conjugation, and end in *asco* or *esco* ; as—

Labasco, *I begin to totter.*

Pallesco, *I turn pale.*

Puerasco, *I become a boy.*

Mitesco, *I become mild.*

3. *Desiderative* Verbs express desire of action, and are of the *Fourth* Conjugation, and end in *urio* ; as—

Esurio, *I am hungry, wish to eat.*

Parturio, *I am in labour, wish to produce.*

ADVERBS.

There are four kinds of Adverbs—

1. Adverbs of place.
2. Adverbs of time.
3. Adverbs of number.
4. Adverbs of description.

1. Adverbs of place answer the questions—

- | | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| 1. Ubi, <i>where?</i> | 4. Unde, <i>whence?</i> |
| 2. Quo, <i>whither?</i> | 5. Qua, <i>which way?</i> |
| 3. Quorsum, <i>whitherward?</i> | 6. Quatenus, quousque, <i>how far?</i> |

2. Adverbs of time answer the questions—

- | | |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. Quando, ubi, <i>when?</i> | 2. Quamdiu, <i>how long?</i> |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|

3. Adverbs of number answer the question—

Quoties, *how often?*

4. Adverbs of description express

manner	quality	quantity.
--------	---------	-----------

Many Adverbs are derived from Adjectives, and end in
ē, ter; as—

Pulchrē, <i>finely.</i>	Fortitēr, <i>bravely.</i>
Misērē, <i>wretchedly.</i>	Sapientēr, <i>wisely.</i>

N.B.—Adverbs of negation are non, haud, *not.*

PREPOSITIONS.

There are three classes of Prepositions—

1. Those which are followed by the Accusative Case.
2. Those which are followed by the Ablative.
3. Those which are followed by the Acc. and Abl.

1. Prepositions followed by the Accusative Case—

Ad, to, at	Juxta, adjoining to, beside
Adversus } toward, against	Ob, over against, by reason of
Adversum }	Penes, in the power of
Ante, before	Per, through
Apud, at, in, among	Pone, behind
Circum, around	Post, after, behind
Circa, circiter, about	Præter, beside
Cis, citra, on the near side of	Prope, near ; propius, proxime
Contra, against, over against	Propter, nigh, on account of
Erga, towards (of the feelings)	Secundum, next, along, according
Extra, outside of, out of	Supra, above [to]
Infra, below	Trans, across
Inter, between, among, amid	Ultra, beyond
Intra, within	Versus, versum, towards

2. Prepositions followed by the Ablative Case—

A, ab, abs, by or from	Ex, e, out of, from
Absque, without	Palam, in sight of [with]
Clam, without the knowledge of	Præ, before, owing to, compared
Coram, in the presence of	Pro, before, for, instead of
Cum, with	Sine, without
De, down from, from, concerning	Tenus, reaching to, as far as

3. Prepositions followed by the Accusative or Ablative—

In, into, against (Acc.)
 In, in, upon, among (Abl.)
 Sub, up to, under (Acc.)
 Sub, under (Abl.)
 Super, over, upon
 Subter, under

In and *sub*, with Accusative, imply *motion*; with Ablative, *rest*.

CONJUNCTIONS.

There are two kinds of Conjunctions—

1. Co-ordinative. 2. Sub-ordinative.

1. Co-ordinative are those which join words and sentences together, but do not affect mood ; as—

Et, que, ac, atque, *and*.
 Aut, vel, ve, *either, or*.
 Sed, autem, *but*.
 Nam, enim, *for, etc., etc.*

- 2 Sub-ordinative are those which join sentences, influencing mood ; as—

Ut, <i>that</i> .	Quum, <i>when, since</i> .
Ne, <i>lest</i> .	Si, <i>if</i> .
Quod } <i>because</i> .	Nisi, <i>unless</i> .
Quia }	

INTERJECTIONS.

An interjection is used to express pleasure, pain, astonishment, etc., and is used with different cases.

O, O ! <i>oh !</i>	} May be used with a Nominative, Vocative, or Accusative Case.
A, ah, <i>alas !</i>	
Eheu, heu, <i>alas !</i>	
Pro, proh, <i>forbid it !</i>	
En } <i>lo ! behold !</i>	} May be used with Nominative or Accusative.
Ecce }	
Hei, <i>alas !</i>	} May be used with a Dative.
Væ, <i>woe !</i>	

PROSODY.

GENERAL RULES FOR THE QUANTITIES OF LATIN WORDS.

I.

The following are **LONG** :—

1. A vowel before two consonants ; as, *jāctāntes*.
2. A vowel before a double consonant or a *j* in same word ; as, *felix*, *Amāzon*, *Ājāx*.
3. Diphthongs ; as, *mensē*, *pāuca*, *pēnē*, *Tēucri*, *hēr*.
4. Datives and ablatives singular and plural when they end in *a*, *æ*, *i*, *o*, *u*, *is* (and *e* of the 5th declension) ; as, *mensā*, *mensē*, *lapidī*, *gradū*, *meliorī*, *dominō*, *bonō*, *gradū*, *mensīs*, *dominīs*, *faciē*.
5. Accusatives plural, unless they end in *a*.

SHORT.

1. One vowel before another vowel in the same word is *short*, as *vīa* ; but *dīi*, *fīo* are long, and *fīdēi*, *illius* are common.
2. All cases in *a* except ablative of the first declension and its corresponding adjectives ; as, *mensā*, *bonā*.

COMMON.

Syllables are sometimes common (i.e. long or short) when a vowel in the same word stands before two consonants, of which the first is a mute and the second is a liquid (*l*, *r*) ; as *dūplex*, *latēbra*.

The last syllable but one (penultimate) of a three-syllable or four-syllable word may be marked *long* or *short* (— ˘) as the pupil hears his tutor pronounce it, or as he himself may know ; as, *lapīde*, *operībus*, *domīnus*, *amābam*.

N.B.—This is a very useful rule for all common words which the pupil is familiar with. He marks the penultimate *long* or *short* directly he hears it pronounced in dictation, or because, having heard it again and again, he is quite sure of the quantity.

To see how these few general rules work we subjoin a couplet marked according to these rules—and these rules only—and we find that we have the quantities of considerably more than half the syllables.

Quāscūque āspiciēs, lācrīmā fecere, liturās ;
Sēd tamen ēt lācrīmā pōndērā vocis habēt.

II.

THE LONG AND SHORT TERMINATIONS WITH PRINCIPAL EXCEPTIONS.

LONG.

a, *i*, *o*, *u*—*c*—*as*, *es*, *os*.

a

ā is long, as *frustrā* ; but—

1. *Putā*, *itā*, *quiā*, *ejā* are short.
2. All cases in *a* are short—as *mensā*, *operā*—except the ablative of the first declension, as *mensā*.

ī is long, as *dominī* ; but—

1. *Nisī*, *quasī* are short.
2. Some dative and vocative cases of Greek nouns are short, as *Chlorī*.
3. *Mihī*, *tibī*, *sibī*, *ubī*, *ibī*, have the *i* common.

o

ō is long, as *dominō*; but—
egō, modō, citō, duō, sciō, nesciō, are
short—putō, common.

u

ū is long, as *tū*, *genū*.

c

c is long, as *āc*, *hīc* (*here*); but—
1. Nēc, donēc, fāc, are short.
2. Hīc (*he, this*) is common.

as

ās is long, as *musās*; but—
Greek cases in *as* of third declension, as

Pallās, *lampadās* (acc.), are short, and
anās (*a duck*).

es

ēs is long, as *hostēs*; but—

1. Some words in *es* increasing short in the gen. are short—*comēs*, *comītis*; but though increasing short—*abiēs*, *ariēs*, *Cerēs*, *pēs*, are long.
2. *Es* from *sum* and its compounds are short, and *penēs* and some Greek plurals, as *Troadēs*.

os

ōs is long, as *gladiōs*; but some Greek words are short, as *Argōs*, *Delōs*, and *ōs*, *ossis* (*a bone*), and *compōs*.

SHORT.

e, y—b, d, t, l, r, n—is, ys, us.

e

e is short, as *regē*; but—

1. Imperatives of second conjugation; as, *monē*;
2. Ablatives of the fifth declension, as *diē*;
3. Adverbs derived from adjectives in *us*, as *operosē*,—are long. *Benē* and *malē* are however short.
4. Monosyllables in *e* (except the enclitics *quē*, *nē*, *vē*) are long; as, *mē*, *tē*, *sē*, *dē*, *ē*, *nē*.
5. *Quarē*, *hodiē*, *ferē*, *fermē*, *ohē*, are long.
6. *Cavē* and *cavē* are both used.
7. *Famē*, abl. of *fames*, is long.

b, d, t, y

are short, as *āb*, *sēd*, *ēt*, *amāt*, *chelŷ*.

l

is short, as *Hannibāl*; but *nīl*, *sāl*, *sōl*, are long—*nihīl*, common.

r

r is short, as *vīr*; but—

1. *Lār*, *Nār*, *vēr*, *fūr*, *cūr*.
2. *Pār* with its compounds *dispār*, etc.

3. *æthēr*, *aēr*, because derived from *αἰθήρ*, *ἀήρ*, are long.

n

n is short, as *tegmēn*; but in many Greek words, such as *Hymēn*, it is long.

is, ys

īs is short, as *dulcīs*; but—

1. Datives and ablatives in *īs*, as *domīnis*;
2. *Sīs*, from *sum*, and its compound *possīs*,
3. *Vīs*, from *volo*, and its compound, *vis*, *strength*;
4. Second per. sing. of the pres. of the fourth conjugation, as *audīs*, also *malīs*, *nolīs*, *velīs*, are long. *ŷs* is short, as *chelŷs*.

us

ūs is short, as *dominūs*; but—

1. Words increasing long in the genitive, as *juventūs*, *salūs*, *senectūs*;
2. The monosyllables *crūs*, *thūs*;
3. The *ūs* of the fourth declension, except Nom. and Voc. Singular, are long.

Syllables that cannot be marked by the help of this Table and by the General Rules already given must be looked out in Dictionary or Gradus; as for instance the first syllable of words such as *quoque*, *genērē*, *gradus*, etc.

EPITOME.

There are

- 8 Parts of Speech.
- 2 Numbers.
- 3 Genders.
- 6 Cases.
- 5 Declensions (Substantives).
- 3 Classes of Adjectives.
- 8 Kinds of Pronouns.
- 4 Conjugations of Verbs.
- 2 Voices.
- 4 Moods.

- 6 Tenses.
- 3 Persons.
Singular. I, thou, he.
Plural. Them, you, they.
- 3 Gerunds.
- 2 Supines.
- 4 Participles.
- 4 Kinds of Adverbs.
- 3 Classes of Prepositions.
- 2 Kinds of Conjunctions.

EIGHT PARTS OF SPEECH :

- | | | |
|-----------------|---|-------------|
| 1. Substantive | } | declined. |
| 2. Adjective | | |
| 3. Pronoun | | |
| 4. Verb | | |
| 5. Adverb | } | undeclined. |
| 6. Preposition | | |
| 7. Conjunction | | |
| 8. Interjection | | |

TWO NUMBERS :

- 1. Singular, as *mensa*, *a table*.
- 2. Plural, as *mensæ*, *tables*.

THREE GENDERS :

- 1. Masculine.
- 2. Feminine.
- 3. Neuter.

SIX CASES, with their signs in English.

- | | |
|----------------|------------------------|
| 1. Nominative, | No sign. |
| 2. Vocative, | O. |
| 3. Accusative, | No sign. |
| 4. Genitive, | Of. |
| 5. Dative, | To or for. |
| 6. Ablative, | In, with, from,
by. |

FIVE DECLENSIONS OF SUB- STANTIVES.

- | | |
|------------|--------|
| 1. æ. Gen. | 3. is. |
| 2. i. | 4. ūs. |
| 5. ei. | |

THREE CLASSES OF ADJECTIVES

- 1. Those which have in the Nominative *three* terminations :

us, a, um, as *Bonus, a, um*.
er, a, um, as *Tener, tenera, tenerum*.
er, is, e, as *Acer, acris, acre*.

- 2. Those which have *two*.

is, e, as *Tristis, triste*.
or, us, as *Melior, melius*.

- 3. Those which have *one*.

Felix, ingens, præstans.

PRONOUNS.

There are 8 Kinds of

Pronouns :

1. Personal.
2. Reflexive.
3. Possessive.
4. Demonstrative.
5. Definitive.
6. Relative.
7. Interrogative.
8. Indefinite.

1. PERSONAL PRONOUNS :

1. Ego, *I*.
2. Tu, *thou (you)*.

Plur.

3. Nos, *we*.
4. Vos, *you, ye*.

2. REFLEXIVE :

Se (sese), *himself, herself, itself, themselves*.

3. POSSESSIVE :

1. Meus, *mine*.
2. Tuus, *thine, your*.
3. Suus, *his, hers, etc*.
4. Cujus, *whose*.
5. Noster, *ours*.
6. Vester, *yours*.

4. DEMONSTRATIVE :

1. Is, *that, he, she, it*.
2. Hic, *this (near me)*.
3. Ille, *that (yonder)*.
4. Iste, *that (near you)*.

5. DEFINITIVE :

1. Idem, *same*.
2. Ipse, *self*.

6. RELATIVE :

Qui, *who or which*.

7. INTERROGATIVE :

Quis, *who or what*?

8. INDEFINITE :

Quis (aliquis), *any one*.

VERBS.

Verbs have

- 4 Conjugations.
- 2 Voices.
- 4 Moods.
- 6 Tenses.
- 6 Persons.
 - 3 Singular.
 - 3 Plural.
- 3 Gerunds.
- 2 Supines.
- 4 Participles.

FOUR CONJUGATIONS

Known by the endings of the Infinitive Mood :

1. Has *ā* long before *re*.
2. Has *ē* long before *re*.
3. Has *ē* short before *re*.
4. Has *ī* long before *re*.

TWO VOICES :

1. Active.
2. Passive.

FOUR MOODS :

1. Indicative.
2. Conjunctive.
3. Imperative.
4. Infinitive.

SIX TENSES :

1. Present.
2. Future Simple.
3. Imperfect.
4. Perfect.
5. Future Perfect.
6. Pluperfect.

THREE PERSONS :

- | | |
|-----------|---------------------|
| Singular. | I, thou (you), he. |
| Plural | We, ye (you), they. |

THREE GERUNDS :

1. Ending in *dum*.
2. Ending in *di*.
3. Ending in *do*.

TWO SUPINES :

1. Supine in *um*.
2. Supine in *u*.

FOUR PARTICIPLES :

1. Present in *ans* or *ens*.
2. Participle in *dus*.
3. Perfect in *us*.
4. Future in *rus*.

PARTICLES.

The four Parts of Speech which are *undeclined* are :

- | | |
|-----------------|------------------|
| 1. Adverb. | 2. Conjunction. |
| 3. Preposition. | 4. Interjection. |

4 KINDS OF ADVERBS :

- | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. Adverbs of Place. | 2. Adverbs of Time. |
| 3. Adverbs of Number. | 4. Adverbs of Description. |

3 CLASSES OF PREPOSITIONS :

1. Those which are followed by the Accusative case.
2. Those which are followed by the Ablative.
3. Those which are followed by the Accusative and Ablative.

2 KINDS OF CONJUNCTIONS :

1. Co-ordinative.
2. Sub-ordinative.

INTERJECTIONS

are particles of exclamation, and are not classed or divided except as regards the cases they are used with.

PART II. SYNTAX.

PART II. SYNTAX.

CONTENTS.

	PAGE		PAGE
1. Simple Sentence.	69-71	15. Adjectives and Their Cases	84
2. Four General Rules	72	1. Gen. after Adjective.	
3. Verb and its Nominative	73	2. Dative after Adjective.	
4. Adjective and Substantive	74	3. Ablative after Adjective.	
5. Apposition	75	16. Different Uses of Cases—	
6. Relative and Antecedent	75	1. Nominative	86
7. Verb and its Accusative	77	2. Accusative	86
8. Nominative after Verb	78	3. Genitive	87
9. Genitive after Verb	79	4. Dative	87
10. Dative after Verb	80	5. Ablative	88
11. Ablative after Verb	81	17. Locative Case.	89
12. Verbs which take Two		18. Ablative Absolute	90
Cases	82	19. "Quam" after the Comp.	92
1. Acc. and Genitive.		20. Sequence of Tenses	93
2. Acc. and Dative.		21. Infinitive Mood	94
13. Verbs which take either of		22. Gerunds	95
Two Cases.	83	23. Supines	95
1. Gen. or Accusative.		24. Participles.	96
2. Gen. or Ablative.		25. The Gerundive	98
14. Verbs which take a Double		26. Accusative and Infinitive	
Case	83	(<i>Enunciatio Obliqua</i>)	100
1. Two Accusatives—Person and		27. "That," and "Ut"	102
Thing.		28. Oblique Statement	104
2. Two Accusatives—Object and		29. "Qui"	104
Complement.		30. Subjunctive Mood	105
3. Two Datives— <i>Sum</i> with other		31. Impersonal Verbs	106
words.		32. Asking Questions	108
		33. Pronouns	110
		34. Prepositions	112

PART II. SYNTAX.

A SIMPLE SENTENCE.

THE simplest sentence that can be framed contains a single thought only; as

Puer amat.
The boy loves.

Puer amatur.
The boy is loved.

That of which or of whom something is said is called the *subject*, as, "the boy"; and that which is said of the subject is called the *predicate* (from *prædico*, to assert), as "loves," "is loved."

We cannot indeed speak without having a *subject* to speak about, and we cannot frame a sentence without *saying something* concerning that subject.

The *subject* in the simplest sentence is always the Nominative Case, and that which is said about the subject—called the *predicate*—is the Verb.

Now this Subject or Nominative case may be either

1. A Substantive.
2. An Adjective used as a Substantive.
3. A Pronoun.
4. An Infinitive Mood.
5. A Clause.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|---|
| 1. Puer amat. | <i>The boy loves.</i> |
| 2. Omnes amant vitam. | <i>All men love life.</i> |
| 3. Nos amamus. | <i>We love.</i> |
| 4. Amare est jucundum. | <i>To love is pleasant.</i> |
| 5. Amare patriam est decorum. | <i>To love one's country is honourable.</i> |

A simple sentence may, however, consist of a single word only—because if a *Pronoun* is the *subject* the latter is implied in the ending of the Verb, as *amamus*, "we love," not necessarily *nos amamus*.

But a simple sentence, though not the simplest sentence, may consist of more than a *subject* and *verb* by the introduction of what is called an *object*; as for example in our simplest sentence, "The boy loves," if we

wish to say *whom* or *what* the boy loves, we must add an *object*, which will generally be in the Accusative, as

Puer amat matrem.
The boy loves his mother.

Thus we see that a simple sentence may consist of (1) a Subject, (2) a Verb, or Predicate, (3) an Object.

Of course any of these three elements may be extended; *e.g.* we may add

1. An Adjective (say *bonus*) to puer;
2. An Adverb (say *valde*) to amat;
3. An Adjective (say *caram*) to matrem : as

Bonus puer valde amat caram matrem.
The good boy greatly loves his dear mother.

These Adjectives *bonus* and *caram* are called *epithets* (from two Greek words, ἐπὶ τοῦ, “*epi*,” *on to*, and “*tithēmi*,” *I place*), and qualify (or *attribute some quality to*) each of the Substantives, and hence are said to be *in attribution* to them.

Valde is an Adverb (*i.e.* something added to the Verb) and qualifies the Verb *amat*. The Adverb frequently increases or lessens the force of the Verb. Instead, however, of *valde* we might have had an *adverbial expression*, as *magno studio* (with great affection):

Bonus puer amat magno studio caram matrem.

Note that the Object is so generally in the Accusative case that we speak of the *Accusative* or *Object*.

We have already learned that most Verbs take the Accusative after them, but we have also learned that some take other cases; as

- (a) Puer potitur pecuniæ (gen.).
The boy gains possession of money.
- (b) Puer paret matri (dat.).
The boy obeys his mother.

- (c) Puer utitur cultro (abl.).
The boy uses his knife.

We can extend a sentence also by putting in some other Substantives which refer to the Substantives we already have, and these second Substantives are then said to be in *apposition*.

Æneas dux amat Achaten comitem.
Æneas the leader loves Achates his attendant.

Here *dux* is in *apposition* to *Æneas*, and *comitem* in *apposition* to *Achaten*.

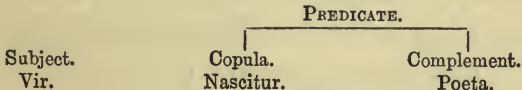
Again : instead of a *single* we sometimes have a *double* object. One is then called the *nearer object*, and is put in the Accusative case, the other the *remoter object*, and is put in the Dative ; as

Puer dat librum matri.
The boy gives a book to his mother.

These remarks do not apply to the Verbs which are called *Copulative* from *copula*, a link, as

Puer est bonus.	<i>The boy is good.</i>
Puer fit vir.	<i>The boy becomes a man.</i>
Vir nascitur poeta.	<i>The man is born a poet.</i>

For in these sentences the word *linked* or *joined* to the subject and *completing* the sense, is called the *complement* (or completion), both *copula* and *complement* forming the *predicate*.



Of course the ways of enlarging a simple sentence might be multiplied in a greater degree.

* * * Reference is made in the following pages to the *Public School Latin Primer* Rules. This is the meaning of the figures that follow each rule. The more important of these rules are also given in full in Latin and English in parallel columns on pp. 192-206.

FOUR GENERAL RULES.

A.

A FINITE Verb agrees with its Nominative Case in Number and Person. 88.

Rex *pugnat*.

Nos *pugnamus*.

Reges *pugnant*.

Etc., etc., etc.

B.

An Adjective agrees with its Substantive in Gender, Number, and Case. 89.

Fortis rex habet *peritum* ducem.

C.

A Substantive is put in the same Case as that with which it is in apposition. 90.

Rex, *fortis vir*, pugnat. Rex vincit ducem, *fortem virum*.

Filius regis, *sapientis viri*, pugnat.

D.

A Relative agrees with its Antecedent in everything but in *Case*; *i.e.* in Gender, Number, and Person. 91.

Rex, *quem* regina amavit, ibat, etc.

Regina, *quam* rex amavit, ibat, etc.

Vidi regem *qui* ibat, etc.

Rex amabit te, O femina, *quæ* amas reginam.

THE VERB AND ITS NOMINATIVE OR SUBJECT.

I.

Every finite Verb must have a Nominative Case as its Subject. 93.

Rex pugnāt. Reges pugnāt.

II.

This Nominative Case or Subject need not always be put in, but is understood.

Pugnāt (understand ille.)

Pugnāt (understand illi.)

III.

The Verb must agree with its Nom. Case or Subject in Number (Sing. or Pl.) and in Person (First, Second, Third). 88.

Ego pugno. Nos pugnāmus.

Tu pugnās. Vos pugnātis.

Ille pugnāt. Illi pugnāt.

IV.

When a Pronoun (*ego, tu, ille, nos, vos, illi*) is the Nominative Case or Subject, it is only put in for the sake of emphasis or distinction.

Ego pugno, tu fugis.

Nos pugnāmus, vos fugitis.

But "I fight," "we flee," without any distinction between "I" and "we," would be simply *pugno, fugimus*.

V.

Two or more Substantives of the Singular Number will have a Verb in the Plural Number. 92.

Rex et dux pugnāt.

VI.

If the Nominative Case or Subjects are of different Persons (as *Ego tu ille*), the Verb (in the Plural Number of course) will agree with the *First* Person rather than with the *Second*, and with the *Second* rather than with the *Third*. 92, 1.

Ego et tu pugnāmus.

Tu et ille pugnātis.

VII.

Sometimes an Infinitive Mood is the Nominative Case or Subject to a Verb, which Infinitive Mood is then considered a Substantive in the Neuter Gender. 140, I. 26, 4.

Mentiri est improbum.

VIII.

Sometimes a clause is the Nominative Case or Subject; and this is also looked upon as a Neuter Substantive. 156, 3.

Celare suas culpas mentiendo est improbum.

IX.

Though it has been stated that all Verbs have a Nominative Case or Subject, yet there are *Impersonal Verbs*, of which more will be said (see page 106, 107)

THE ADJECTIVE AND SUBSTANTIVE.

I.

The use of the Adjective is to describe the nature of the Substantive with which it goes, *i.e.*, it “qualifies the Substantive.”

II.

The Adjective (including the Participle and Adjective Pronoun, which partake of the nature of the Adjective) agrees with the Substantive in Gender, Number, and Case—*i.e.*, if the Substantive be of the Masculine Gender, the Adjective must be Masculine ; if the Substantive be of the Singular Number, the Adjective must be Singular ; if the Substantive be in the Nominative Case, the Adjective must be in the Nominative, &c.

Bonus rex regit cives.

Rex laudat *fortem* ducem.

Boni reges regunt cives.

Rex laudat *fortes* duces.

Bonus rex regit cives.

rex being Masculine, *bonus* is Masculine

rex being Singular, *bonus* is Singular

rex being Nominative, *bonus* is Nominative

Boni reges regunt cives.

reges being Masculine, *boni* is Masculine

reges being Plural, *boni* is Plural

reges being Nominative, *boni* is Nominative.

Rex laudat *fortem* ducem

ducem being Masculine, *fortem* is Masculine

ducem being Singular, *fortem* is Singular

ducem being Accusative, *fortem* is Accusative.

III.

If the Adjective, however, has to go with Substantives, which are of different Genders, it agrees with the Masculine rather than the Feminine ; but in things without life it will often be put in the Neuter Gender. 92, 2. 92 (*a.*)

Rex et regina sunt *boni*.

Labor (*m*) et ignavia (*f.*) sunt dissimillima (*n.*)

IV.

Adjectives are often used by themselves as Substantives to represent either persons or things, 156, as

Multi, *many men.*

Multa, *many things.*

Vera dicere est honestum.

APPOSITION.

When two Substantives come together representing the same thing, they are put in the same Case. 90.

Reges, *fortes viri*, pugnant.
Rex amat reginam, *bonam feminam*.

Filius regis, *fortis viri*, pugnat.
Rex dat ensem duci, *bono viro*.
Rex utitur ense, *acuto telo*.

But the two Substantives need not necessarily be of the same Number or Gender.

Vixit Thebis *magno oppido*.
Dedit regi ensem, *donum reginæ*.

This is called Apposition—from *appono*, to place beside—

a Substantive placed (*in meaning*) by the side of another Substantive.

To explain this—

Reges, *fortes viri*, pugnant
As *reges* and *viri* are both of them evidently the same persons referred to—put in *apposition*, or placed by the side of each other—they are both of them in the same Case, the Nominative.

Rex dat ensem duci, *bono viro*.

Here *viro*, referring to *duci*, is put in the same Case as *duci* (Dative). In the last sentence (*Rex utitur ense*, &c.) it is very plain that *telo* refers to *ense*; it is therefore put in the same Case as *ense* (Ablative).

THE RELATIVE AND ANTECEDENT.

I.

The *Relative* means the Relative Pronoun “*qui*,” which *relates* or *refers* to some person or thing mentioned before.

The *Antecedent* means the person or thing mentioned before—from *ante*, before, and *cedo*, to go.

The *Relative* and *Antecedent* are doubtless most difficult for young boys to understand, chiefly because, in whatever Case the Relative Pronoun is, it must, according to the English language, come before its Verb to make sense, and because it has to be taken as near

I.

to its Antecedent as possible.
Many boys will parse

Puer fecit hoc,
The boy did this,

who will not be able to parse

Quod puer fecit,
Which the boy did,

though both contain simply a Nominative Case, a Verb, and an Accusative Case. They will stumble at the latter because they have to take the Accusative Case first.

II.

This Relative Pronoun agrees (see p. 31) with its Antecedent (*i. e.*, the word to which

it refers) in everything but *Case*.
91.

Rex, *qui* amavit reginam, ibat, &c.
Regina, *quæ* amavit regem, ibat, &c.
Reges, *quos* regina amavit, ibant, &c.
Regina, *quam* rex amavit, ibat, &c.
Rex amavit te, O femina, *quæ* amas
reginam.

Taking the first sentence—

Rex, *qui* amavit reginam, ibat, &c.
rex being Sing., *qui* is also Sing.
rex being Mas., *qui* is also Mas.
rex being 3rd Per., *qui* is also 3rd Per.

But though *rex* is Nom. and
qui is Nom., *qui* is not the Nom.
because *rex* is, for *rex* is the
Nom. to the Verb *ibat*, and *qui*
is the Nom. to *amavit*.

Taking the fourth sentence—

Regina, *quam* rex amavit, ibat, &c.
Regina being Fem., *quam* is also Fem.
Regina being Sing., *quam* is also Sing.

But *regina* is Nom. and *quam*
is Acc., because *regina* is the
Nom. to the Verb *ibat* and
quam is the Acc. after the Verb
amavit.

III.

The *Case* of the Relative Pro-
noun may be *any Case* which
the Verb governs, as—

Ensis, *quem* dux habet, est acutus

Pauperes, *quorum* boni miserentur,
sunt grati (thankful).

Morbus, *cui* medicus medetur, est
gravis.

Ensis, *quo* rex utitur, est acutus.

Again—

Rex, *cui* dux dat ensem, est fortis.

Rex, *cujus* ensis est acutus, est fortis.

Rex, *a quo* civitas gubernatur, est
fortis.

Milites, *quibuscum* dux ibat, sunt
fortes.

In the sentences given above
it will be seen that in turning
them into English the Relative
Pronoun, in whatever case it
is, is taken before its Verb,
that it may come as near to
its Antecedent—the word to
which it refers—as possible,
as—

The sword, *which* the leader has, &c.
which Acc. after *has*.

The poor, *whom* the good pity, &c.
whom Gen. after *pity*.

The disease, *which* the physician, &c.
which Dat. after *heal*.

The sword, *which* the king uses, &c.
which Abl. after *uses*.

Again—

The king, *to whom* the leader gives,
&c. *to whom* Dat. after *gives*.

The king, *whose* sword is sharp, &c.
whose Gen. of the possessor.

The king, *by whom* the state is, &c.
whom Abl. after *a*.

The soldiers, *with whom* the general,
&c.

whom Abl. after *cum*.

THE VERB AND ITS ACCUSATIVE OR OBJECT.

I.

All ordinary Transitive Verbs take an Accusative case after them, which Accusative Case is called the nearer object. 95, 96.

Rex laudat *ducem*.

The word *Transitive* is made up of two Latin words, *trans*, across, and *eo*, to go. To our present purpose it will signify *passing over*, and it means, when spoken of a Verb, that the action of the Verb *passes over* to the Noun which governs it.

By an ordinary Transitive Verb, then, is meant a Verb after which you can place some Common Substantive to complete the sense, as—

I touch.

This will take any such common word, as *table, chair, pen, ink, book, cat, dog, house, &c.*

In other words, there is an action in *touch* which passes on to *table, chair, pen, ink, &c.*

II.

A Verb is call *Intransitive*—that is, *not* Transitive (*in*

II.

implying *not*)—when there is no action in the Verb to pass over

Sto, I stand.

Arbor crescit, the tree grows.

Avis volat, the bird flies.

Here it can be seen that *stand, grows, flies* are *Intransitive*, for there is no action to *pass over*. We need put no Substantive after them to make sense.

Intransitive Verbs then (as a rule) take no Case.

Intransitive Verbs are also called *Neuter*.

The following are some common *Neuter* or *Intransitive* Verbs—

Cado, I fall.

Sedeo, I sit.

Cubo, I lie down.

Sto, I stand.

Curro, I run.

Vivo, I live.

III.

Some Neuter Verbs, however, do take an Accusative after them, but only an Accusative of some particular word which is of like meaning with the Verb.

Servio servitutum. Ludo aleam.
Vivo vitam.

This Accusative is called the Accusative of *kindred meaning*.

THE NOMINATIVE AFTER THE VERB.

Although most verbs take after them an *Accusative* Case, after some a *Nominative* appears, a full list of which will be found on p. 156 of P.S.L.P.

They are—

1. Copulative Verbs.
2. The Passive of those Verbs which in the Active are called Factitive Verbs.

N.B.—These words—Copulative, Factitive, &c.—are explained, see P.S.L.P. p. 176, and p. 75.

I.

The Copulative Verbs are—

Sum, *I am.*
 Fio, *I become.*
 Appareo, *I appear.*
 Existo, *I stand forth.*
 Audio, *I am called.*
 Manco, *I remain.*
 Nascor, *I am born.*
 Videor, *I seem.*
 Evado, *I turn out.*

II.

The following are the passive of some of the principal Factitive Verbs—

Habeor, *I am esteemed.*
 Existimor, *I am thought.*
 Nominor, *I am named.*
 Appellor, *I am called.*
 Dicor, *I am said.*
 Creor, *I am created.*

It will be seen that after these Verbs a Nominative appears, which must be regarded as a *Complement*, or that which *completes* the sense.

Examples—

Rex	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{est} \\ \text{fit} \\ \text{videtur} \\ \text{habetur} \\ \text{appellatur} \\ \text{vocatur} \end{array} \right\}$	dux.
-----	---	------

Nemo nascitur sapiens.
 Poeta evadit orātor.

III.

When, however, the Copulative Verb is in the Infinitive, and is preceded by an Accusative, its Complement will also be in the Accusative.

Dicunt regem	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{esse} \\ \text{fieri} \\ \text{vocari} \end{array} \right\}$	ducem.
--------------	--	--------

Dicunt poetam evadere oratōrem.

The Latin Primer Rule for this is: "*Copulative Verbs. whether finite or infinite, generally have a Complement agreeing with the Subject;*" but this requires some such explanation as we have given above.

THE GENITIVE AFTER THE VERB.

I.

Some Verbs are followed by the Genitive—*Sum* when it signifies—127 (*b*)

Nature	Function	Token	Duty
<i>Nominis</i>	<i>est</i>	(<i>it is the nature</i>)	<i>errare.</i>
<i>Regis</i>	<i>est</i>	(<i>it is the duty</i>)	<i>imperare</i>
	<i>recte</i>		

II.

Interest, *it imports*. Refert, *it concerns*. 129.

Regis interest regere recte.
Regis refert regere recte.

III.

Verbs of Accusing, Acquitting, Condemning, Warning, &c. 133.

These, as well as a Genitive case of the charge, take an Accusative of the Object (see p. 12).

Rex	{	accusat ducem <i>ignaviæ</i> .
		condemnat ducem multorum
		scelerum.
		absolvit ducem <i>ignaviæ</i> .
		admonet ducem <i>pristinæ fortunæ</i> .

IV.

Many Verbs of Abounding, Wanting, Enriching, Depriving (and also Potior). 119 (*b*)

Rex	{	eget <i>pecuniæ</i> .
		potitur <i>urbis</i> .
		liberat ducem <i>culpæ</i> .

These also take an Ablat., see p.

V.

Misereor and miseresco, *I pity*. 135.

Misereor	} <i>pauperum</i> .
Miseresco	

Miseror, commiseror, take an Accusative

VI.

Memini, reminiscor, recordor, *I remember*; obliviscor, *I forget* 133 (*a*).

Rex	{	meminit	} <i>suarum culpam.</i>
		reminiscitur	
		recordatur	
		obliviscitur	

These also take an Acc. (see p. 83).

VII.

Piget, *it irks*; Pudet, *it shames*; Pœnitet, *it repents*; Tædet, *it disgusts*; Miseret, *it moves pity*—

take a Genitive with an Accusative (see p. 82). 134.

Regem	{	piget	} <i>scelerum</i> (<i>crimes.</i>)
		pudet	
		pœnitet	
		tædet	

Regem miseret *pauperum*.

These sentences literally rendered, are—

It irks, it shames, it repents, the king,

but in construing, the Accusative should be taken first, as if, it were a Nominative.—

The king repents, &c., of his crimes.

THE DATIVE AFTER THE VERB.

I.

Some Verbs are followed by the Dative. Many of these may be remembered if learned in the following rhyme (See Henry's "First Latin Book," (pp. 62, 63) :

A Dative put, remember pray,
After *envy, spare, obey,*
Persuade, believe, command; to these
Add *pardon, succour, and displease*;
With *vacare* "to have leisure,"
And *placere* "to have pleasure,"
With *nubere* (of the female said),
The English of it is "to wed;"
Servire add, and add *studere,*
Heal, favour, hurt, resist, and indulge.

104, 105, 106.

N.B.—*Juvo I please, lædo I hurt,*
govern an Acc. *Jubeo I order*
governs an Acc. (or Dative).

Rex	{ <i>invidet</i> (envies) <i>parcit</i> (spares) <i>paret</i> (obeys) <i>persuadet</i> (persuades) <i>credit</i> (believes) <i>imperat</i> (commands) <i>ignoscit</i> (pardons) <i>succurrit</i> (succours) <i>dispicit</i> (displeases) <i>placet</i> (pleases) <i>favet</i> (favourites) <i>nocet</i> (hurts) <i>resistit</i> (opposes) }	} <i>duci.</i>
-----	---	----------------

Rex *vacat* (has leisure for) *philosophiæ.*

Regina *nubit* (marries) *regi.*

Rex *servit* (is the slave of) *duci.*

I

Rex *studet* (is eager after) *literis.*
 Medicus *medetur* (heals) *morbo.*
 Rex *indulget* (indulges in) *dolori.*

II.

Verbs compounded with the following Particles—106 (a.)

bene, male, satis, re,
 ad, ante, con, in, inter, de,
 ob, sub, super, post *et præ.*

Rex	{ <i>benefacit</i> (does good to) <i>maledicit</i> (speaks ill of) <i>satisfacit</i> (satisfies) <i>resistit</i> (resists) <i>adhæret</i> (keeps close to) <i>antecellit</i> (surpasses) <i>confidit</i> (trusts in) <i>infert</i> bellum (wages war on) <i>interdicit</i> (forbids) bellum <i>detrahit</i> (takes away from) pecuniam <i>obstat</i> (opposes) <i>subvenit</i> (assists) <i>superfuit</i> (has outlived) <i>præstat</i> (is superior to) }	} <i>duci.</i>
-----	---	----------------

Rex *postfert* (sacrifices) *suas opes libertati.*

Many Verbs, however, so compounded are construed with the Accusative or with the Case of their own Preposition—the Preposition being of course repeated.

III.

Sum, with its compounds except *possum*. 107 (b).

Absum, I am absent.

Adsum, I am present, stand by.

Desum, I am wanting.

Insun, I am in, or upon.

Intersum, I take part in.

Obsum, I am against, injure.

Præsum, I am at the head of.

Prosum, I am serviceable.

Subsum, I am under.

Supersum, I survive.

Rex	{	<i>est causa doloris duci.</i>
		<i>abest reginæ.</i>
		<i>adest duci.</i>
		<i>interfuit præliis.</i>
		<i>obfuit duci.</i>
		<i>præfuit exercitui.</i>
		<i>prodest multis.</i>
		<i>superfuit reginæ.</i>

III.

Virtus deest (is wanting to) *regi*.

Magna fortitudo inerat duci.

Dux subest arbori.

IV.

Est, sunt, when used for *habeo*, take a Dative. 107 (c.)

Est mihi pater—There is a father to me; i.e., I have a father.

V.

Sum and other Verbs are sometimes followed by two Datives, one being used as a Complement, the other being the Dative of the Recipient. 108.

Mare est exitio nautis—The sea is a destruction to sailors. (See p. .)

THE ABLATIVE AFTER THE VERB.

I.

Some Verbs are followed by the Ablative. 119 (IX. a.)

Fungor, to perform.

Fruor, to enjoy.

Utor, to use.

Vescor, to eat (feed upon.)

Potior, to get possession of.

Dignor, to deem worthy.

Rex	{	<i>fungitur munere ducis.</i>
		<i>fruitur victoriâ.</i>
		<i>utitur pecuniâ.</i>
		<i>vescitur carne.</i>
		<i>potitur urbe.</i>
		<i>dignatur se honore.</i>

Potior takes also a Gen. (see p.79).

II.

Verbs of Abounding, Wanting, Enriching, Depriving. 119 (b.)

Rex	{	<i>abundat</i> (abounds) <i>divitiis</i> .
		<i>eget</i> (is in need of) <i>pecuniâ</i> .
		<i>locupletavit</i> (enriched) <i>du-</i> <i>cem auro.</i>
		<i>fraudat</i> (defrauds) <i>me pe-</i> <i>cuniâ.</i>

These also take a Gen. (p.79.).

III.

Verbs when compounded with Prepositions, *ab, de, ex*. 122 (a.)

Consul magistratu abiit (retired from office.)

Rex se dejecit (threw himself down *equo*.)

Dux exiit (went out of) *domo*.

VERBS WHICH TAKE TWO CASES.

ACCUSATIVE AND GENITIVE.

I.

Verbs of Accusing, Acquitting, Condemning, Warning.

Rex	{	accusat <i>ducem ignaviæ</i> (cowardice.)
		condemnat <i>ducem multorum scelerum.</i>
		absolvit (acquits) <i>ducem ignaviæ.</i>
		admonet <i>ducem pristinæ fortunæ.</i>

II.

Figet, *it irks.*

Pœnitet, *it repents.*

Pudet, *it shames.*

Tædet, *it disgusts.*

Miseret, *it moves pity.*

<i>Regem</i>	{	piget	}	<i>scelerum</i>
		puget		
		pœnitet		
		tædet		

Regem miseret pauperum.

ACCUSATIVE AND DATIVE.

Verbs of Comparing, Giving, Restoring, Promising, Owing, Paying, Telling, Threatening, Withdrawing.

Rex confert magna parvis.

Rex	{	dat præmium	}	<i>duci</i>
		reddit præmium		
		promittit præmium		
		debet pecuniam		
		solvit pecuniam		
		narrabat hæc		
		minatur mortem		
detrahit pecuniam				

In all these sentences the Accusative is the Case of the *nearer Object*, and the Dative the Case of the *remoter Object*.

VERBS WHICH TAKE EITHER OF TWO CASES.

GENITIVE OR ACCUSATIVE.

Memini, *I remember.*
 Recordor, *I remember.*
 Reminiscor, *I remember*
 Obliviscor, *I forget.*

Rex { meminit
 reminiscitur } suarum culp-
 arum (or
 recordatur } suas culpas.)
 obliviscitur }

GENITIVE OR ABLATIVE.

See pp.79.81.

Verbs of Abounding or Wanting,
 Enriching or Depriving, as also
potior.

Rex eget pecuniæ (or pecuniâ).
 Rex potitur urbis (or urbe).
 Rex liberat ducem culpæ (or culpâ).

VERBS WHICH TAKE A DOUBLE CASE.

TWO ACCUSATIVES—PER-
 SON AND THING.

Verbs of Asking, Teaching, En-
 treating, Demanding, Admon-
 ishing, Concealing.

Rex { rogavit hoc ducem.
 docuit filium literas.
 orat te hoc.
 poscit ducem pacem.
 monuit ducem ea.
 celavit ea ducem.

TWO ACCUSATIVES—
 OBJECT AND COMPLEMENT.

Verbs of making, Calling,
 Thinking, &c.

Rex { fecit militem ducem.
 vocavit urbem Romam
 putat ducem stultum

TWO DATIVES.

Sum with other words.

Filius est dedecori matri—*The son is a disgrace to his mother.*
 Vertis id vitio mihi—*You impute it as a fault to me.*

ADJECTIVES AND THEIR CASES.

It should be noted here, that although logically the construction of Cases with Verbs and Adjectives ought to be considered under one head, it has been found convenient in this very elementary work to treat the Verbs and Adjectives apart.

Adjectives, like Verbs, take certain Cases after them. We will give them in the following order.

1. Those which take the Genitive.
2. Those which take the Dative.
3. Those which take the Ablative.
4. Those which take the Genitive or Ablative.

THE GENITIVE AFTER THE ADJECTIVE.

I

The Genitive of the Thing Measured follows words denoting quantity, such as *satis*, *parum*, &c., and Neuter Adjectives, such as *aliquid*, *multum*, &c. 131.

Rex habet *satis sapientiæ* (*sufficient wisdom.*)

Rex habet *multum pecuniæ* (*much money.*)

II.

Adjectives which signify—

skill,	knowledge,	desire,	fear,
care,	memory,	power,	innocence,

and their contraries—132 (I.), 133 (II.)—

take a Genitive after them—

Rex est	{	<i>peritus belli.</i>
		<i>negligens (regardless of) officii.</i>
		<i>cupidus laudis.</i>
		<i>potens (master of) sui</i>
		<i>consciens recti.</i>
		<i>memor beneficii.</i>
		<i>timidus mortis.</i>
		<i>insons mendacii (falsehood)</i>

THE DATIVE AFTER THE ADJECTIVE.

Adjectives which signify—

advantage,
disadvantage,
likeness,
unlikeness,

pleasure,
displeasure,
submission,
nearness, &c., &c.

take a Dative after them. 105, 106.

Rex est { utilis patriæ, inutilis exercitui.
similis deo, dissimilis patri.
gratus omnibus.
supplex reginæ.
finitimus (near akin to) pootæ

THE ABLATIVE AFTER THE ADJECTIVE.

I.

The following Adjectives take
an Ablative—119 (IX. a)—

dignus, *worthy*;
indignus, *unworthy*;
contentus, *contented*;
fretus, *relying*;
præditus, *endued*.

ex est { dignus culpa.
indignus laude.
contentus parvo,
præditus virtute.

Rex fretus divitiis abiit

II.

As also the Substantives
opus and *usus*—119 (IX. a).

Opus est mihi pecuniâ.
Usus est mihi pecuniâ.

III.

Adjectives which take a Geni-
tive or Ablative. 119 (IX. b.)

abounding,
wanting,
enriching,
depriving.

Teria est dives equorum (or *equis*).
Rex est expers metus (or *metu*).

DIFFERENT USES OF CASES.

We have given the Cases as they come after Verb or Adjective. We proceed now to consider some of the different uses of the different Cases, and to give examples.

NOMINATIVE.

I.

The Nominative as Subject. 93.

Rex pugnât.

II.

Nominative put in Apposition. 90.

Rex, filius ducis, pugnât.

III.

Nominative used in exclamations with or without an Interjection. 138.

Infanâ im!—Unutterable!

Ecce nova turba!—Lo! a new disturbance!

IV.

Nominative, with *quam*, after Comparative. 124, xiv. (I.)

Ferrum est durius quam cera.

Nominative after certain Verbs (see p.78).

VOCATIVE.

The Vocative is said to stand out of the sentence, as it never depends on any word. 137.

O Rex, pugnâs.

ACCUSATIVE.

I.

Accusative as Subject of the Infinitive. 93 (2).

Scio regem pugnare.

N.B.—This will be fully explained in another place (see p.100).

II.

Accusative put in Apposition. 90.

Rex laudat ducem, fortem virum.

III.

Accusative of Respect. 100.

Rex tremit artus.

Rex est nudus lacertos.

IV.

Accusatives used in Exclamations with or without an Interjection. 138.

Me miserum, wretched me!

En quatuor aras! Lo, four altars!

V.

Accusative, Duration of Time 102 (1).

Rex regnavit duos annos.

VI.

Accusative, Measure of Space.
102 (2).

Muri erant duos pedes alti.
See Ablative of Measure, p.

VII.

Accusative, after certain Pre-
positions (see list, p.58).

Rex dixit contra spem.

VIII.

Accusative of Place *Whither*.
101.

Rex ivit Romam.

IX.

Accusative, with *quam*, after
Comparative. 124 (xiv. 2)

*Puto mortem leviozem quam dede-
cus.*

Accusative after Transitive
Verbs, as already mentioned.

GENITIVE.

I.

Genitive of the Author and
Possessor. 127.

Rex est filius ducis.

II.

Genitive put in Apposition.
90.

Rex est filius ducis, fortis viri.

III.

Genitive of Quality (with
Epithet. 128 (II.)

Rex est vir magnæ fortitudinis.

III.

Ablative may be also used
(see p. 88.)

IV.

Elliptic Genitives. (128) (a.)

Parvi, of little value.

Minoris, of less value.

Minimi, of very little value.

Magni, of great value.

Pluris, of more value.

Plurimi, of high value.

Tanti, of so great value or price.

Quanti, of what price.

Maximi, of very great price.

*Rex emit fundum magni, at a great
price.*

Genitive after certain Verbs
(see p.79.) and Adjectives.

DATIVE.

I.

Dative in Apposition. 90.

Rex dat librum duci, forti viro

II.

With the exclamations, *hei, alas! vœ, woe!* 139.

He mihi! Vœ regi!

III.

Dative after certain Verbs (see p.89). 104, 105, 106.

ABLATIVE.

I.

Ablative in Apposition. 90.

Rex utitur *ense, telo acuto.*

II.

Ablative after the Comparative degree. 124 (XIV.)

Rex est *fortior duce.*

III.

Ablative after certain Prepositions (see list). 122 (XII.)

Dux dicebat *coram rege.*

After some when compounded.

Rex *abiit magistratu.*

IV.

Ablative of the Agent takes the Preposition, *a, ab.* 122 (VII. b).Rex *culpatur a reginâ.*

V.

Ablative of Cause (*a.*)Rex est bonus *amore virtutis.*

VI.

Ablative of the Instrument. (*b.*)Rex *defendit se manibus.*

VII.

Ablative of Manner (*c*)Rex *vicit ducem fraude.*Excepting in a few phrases Ablative of Manner without Epithet requires *cum.*

VIII.

Ablative of Condition. (*d.*)Rex est *fortis mea sententia.*

IX.

Ablative of Quality with Epithet. (*e.*)Rex est *benigno vultu.*

X.

Ablative of Respect. (*f.*)Rex *angitur (is distressed) animo.*

XI.

Ablative of Price. (*g.*)Rex *emit fundum magna pecunia.*

XII.

Ablative of Measure. (*h.*)Murus erat *latus pede (a foot broad.)*

XIII.

Ablative of Matter. (*i.*)Cibus *ducis constat carne, &c.*

XIV.

Ablative of Time *When?* 120 (X.)Rex pugnabit *hieme*.Rex veniet *biduo* (*in two days*).Romulus vixit *paucis annis* ante
Numam, *multis annis* post Home-
rum.

XV.

Ablative of Place *Where?* 121
(XI. B.)

See Locative Case, below.

Rex vixit *Neapoli* et postea *Thebis*.
Templa patent (*are open*) *tota urbe*.

XVI.

Ablative of a Town when the
question is *Whence?* 121 (XI. C.)Rex fugit *Roma*.So also with *domo* and *rure*.

XVII.

The Ablative of Place is put
without a Preposition, when
the question is *By what road?*
121 (XI. A.)Rex ibat *præcipiti via*.

XVIII.

Ablative Absolute. (125)

Urbe condita, Romulus factus est
rex.This Ablative Absolute, how-
ever, we must explain at greater
length.

LOCATIVE CASE.

I.

See Latin Primer. 121 (B, a.)

"Place Where" is put in a Case resembling the Genitive Singular if the
word be of the First or Second Declension, *Singular Number*; if not, in a
Case resembling the Ablative.

II.

Like to the above are used. 121 (B, b).

humis, on the ground.
Comi, at home.*belli*
militiæ } at the
 } wars*ruri*, in the country.Rex est fortis *domi* et *militiæ*.

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.*

The Latin Primer Rule is as follows :

A Substantive combines with a Participle in the Ablative which is called Absolute.

Now this requires some explanation which a teacher will always supply when possible *vivâ voce* to his pupil or class. But some people take up the study of Latin without any help but that derived from Books. Hence many explanations in the Author's Books will, of course, be passed over by those who, in a much better way, will make the explanation by word of mouth.

In turning Latin into English, the rule for construing is this :

Take the Ablative Case of the Substantive as if it were a *Nominative*—by which I mean, take it without putting any sign before it—and then take the Participle either *directly*, or *as soon after* as you can.

It must be noted, however, that it is not always a *Substantive* that is used ; but sometimes it may be an *Adjective* (used

as a Substantive), and sometimes the Relative Pronoun.

EXAMPLE 1.—“In eodem quondam prato pascebantur anseres et grues. *Adveniente domino prati*, grues,’ &c., &c.

The Latin words in italics form an Ablative Absolute. Follow the Rule given. Take the Ablative Case of the Substantive, *domino*, but put no sign to it—saying, *Domino*, “the master ;” *prati*, “of the field ;” and then the Participle (which you will find in the Ablative Case, *adveniente*, “coming up.” “The master of the field coming up, the cranes (easily flew away).”

EXAMPLE 2.—“Mures aliquando habuerunt consilium quomodo a fele caverent. *Multis aliis propositis*. omnibus placuit,” &c.

Multis aliis propositis is an Ablative Absolute in the Plural Number. There is no Substantive to take, but there are two Adjectives. So we take *multis aliis*, putting no sign before it, and say, *Multis aliis*, “many other things ;” *propositis*, having been proposed *placuit*, “it pleased,” &c., &c., &c.

* N.B.--Absolute, *i.e.* released (*absolutus*) so to speak from government.

EXAMPLE 3.—“Agricola senex quum mortem sibi propinquare sentiret, filios convocavit, quos, ut fieri solet, interdum discordare noverat, et fascem virgultorum afferri jussit. *Quibus allatis*, filios hortabatur, &c. &c.

Quibus allatis is an Ablative Absolute, the Relative Pronoun being used. We take *quibus* (agreeing with *virgultis*, understood), putting no sign before it, and say, *Quibus*, “which ;” *allatis*, “having been brought ;” *hortabatur*, “he exhorted,” &c.

Sometimes instead of a *Participle* another Substantive (or an Adjective) is used.

Cæsare duce vincemus.

Cæsar, being our leader, we shall conquer.

There will be still more difficulty in knowing when to use an Ablative Absolute in turning English into Latin.

The King, when he has conquered his enemies, will return home.

Here it is said that the King will do a certain thing after another thing has been done—that he will return home when he has conquered his enemies ; *when he has conquered his enemies*

may therefore be put into an Ablative Absolute, as—

Rex, hostibus victis, rediit domum.

If you are my leader, I shall conquer.

If you are my leader may be an Ablative Absolute.

Te duce, vincam.

Care must be taken not to put in the Ablative Case a Substantive having a participle agreeing with it when it forms the *subject of the Verb*.

Cæsar, being made consul, departed

We must not put the words *Cæsar being made Consul* as an Ablative Absolute ; if we did, we should leave “departed” without any Nominative Case.

Cæsar factus consul, (not *Cæsare facto consule*) abiit.

If, however, we say ;

Cæsar, his enemies being conquered, departed.

we can put *his enemies being conquered* into an Ablative Absolute (*victis hostibus*), as it does not form the Nominative Case or Subject to the Verb.

QUAM AFTER THE COMPARATIVE DEGREE.

There are two ways of expressing the word "than" in Latin after a comparative degree (124 xiv.).

- I. By the word *quam*, which is followed by *any* case, the things compared being in the *same* case.

Iron is harder than wax.

Ferrum est durius quam cera.

They say that iron is harder than wax.

Dicunt ferrum esse duriores quam ceram.

Sooner forget injuries than kindnesses.

Citius obliviscere injuriarum quam beneficiorum.

- II. By the Ablative case, *quam* being left out.

Iron is harder than wax.

Ferrum est durius cerâ (Abl.).

I think that death is lighter than disgrace.

Puto mortem esse leviores dedecore.

But in comparison with cases other than the Nominative or Accusative *quam* must be used, as also where its omission would cause any ambiguity.

This is more useful to me than to you.

Hoc est utilius mihi quam tibi.

I have lost more money than you (have).

Ego amisi plus pecuniæ quam tu.

He is richer in lands than in servants.

Est ditior agris quam ministris.



SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

One very important thing for a boy to remember is the proper Sequence of Tenses.

The Present, Future, and Perfect (with "have"), are followed by *Present or Perfect Subjunctive, or Future Participle in rus with Sim.*

The Imperfect, Pluperfect, and Perfect are followed by *Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive, or Future Participle in rus with Essem.*

Quæro, <i>I ask.</i>	}	Quid agas, <i>what you are doing.</i>
Quæram, <i>I will ask.</i>		Quid egeris, <i>what you did or have done.</i>
Quæsiui, <i>I have asked.</i>		Quid acturus sis, <i>what you are going to do.</i>

Quærebam, <i>I was asking.</i>	}	Quid ageres, <i>what you were doing.</i>
Quæsiui, <i>I asked.</i>		Quid egisses, <i>what you had done.</i>
Quæsiueram, <i>I had asked.</i>		Quid acturus esses, <i>what you were about to do.</i>

Let these points also be noted.

Dicit se amare, *he says that he is loving.*
 Dixit se amare, *he said that he was loving.*

Dicit se amavisse, *he says that he has loved, or loved.*
 Dixit se amavisse, *he said that he had loved.*

Pollicetur se amaturum esse, *he promises that he will love.*
 Pollicitus est se amaturum esse, *he promised that he would love.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

I.

The Verb Infinitive consists of Verb-Nouns.

(1.) The Infinitive.

(2.) The Gerunds } which supply
(3.) The Supines } cases to In-
 } finitive.

(4.) Participles.

See Latin Primer, 45 (II.)

II.

The Infinitive with the Gerunds, Participles, and Supine in *um*, governs the same cases as the Verb Finite. 142 (III.)

Dux vult obedire magistro.

Dux cupidus est obediendi magistro.

III.

The Infinitive is often used as a Substantive for the Nominative or Accusative Case. 140 (I.)

Discere (Nom) est difficile.

Puer dicit (calls it) miserum mori
(Acc.)

IV

It is used Obliquely (or in what is known as Enuntiatio Obliqua) with Accusative of Subject. 140 (3); 93 (2).

Aiunt terram esse rotundam.

V.

It is used in narration for a Finite Verb. 140 (2).

Fors omnia regere.

Chance governed all things.

VI.

It is used to carry on the construction of a Verb or Adjective. 140 (4).

Puer voluit discere multa

Puer paratus (ready) discere multa

GERUNDS.

I.

There are three Gerunds ending in *dum*, *di*, *do*, reckoned as part of the Verb Infinite, and, as mentioned above, forming as it were cases when the Infinitive is declined as a Verbal Substantive.

II.

These Gerunds are called

1. Accusative in *dum*, *Amandum*, *loving*.
2. Genitive in *di*, *Amandi*, *of loving*.
3. Dative or Ablative in *do*, *Amando*, *to or for or by loving*.

III.

The *Accusative* Gerund is joined to Prepositions. 141 (1.)

Puer natus est ad agendum.

IV.

The *Genitive* Gerund is joined to Substantives and Adjectives. 141 (2).

Rex didicit artem scribendi.

Rex est cupidus bene scribendi.

V.

The *Dative* Gerund is joined to Nouns and Verbs 141 (3.)

Puer dat operam discendo.

VI.

The *Ablative* Gerund is of cause or manner, or is used with a Preposition. 141 (4.)

Puer discit docendo.

Puer vincit pugnando.

Reges rixantur (quarrel) de spoliando.

SUPINES.

I.

There are two Supines called—

1. Supine in *um*, *Amatum*, *to love*.
3. Supine in *u*, *Amatu*, *to be loved*.

II.

The Supine in *um* is an Accusative after Verbs of motion; it is thus equivalent to “ut” with the Subjunctive. 141 (5.)

Puer it (goes) dormitum.

This Supine, used with *iri*, which is the Present Infini-

II.

tive Passive of *eo*, *to go*, forms the Infinitive of the Future Passive. 141 (5 a.)

Dux sperat proelia non pugnatum iri

III.

The Supine in *u* follows the indeclinable Substantives *fas*, *nefas*, *opus* & certain Adjectives, & is an Abl. of Respect. 141 (6.)

Difficile est dictu.

It is difficult to say, or to be said, or in saying.

PARTICIPLES.

I.

There are Four Participles.

1. Present in *ans* or *ens*, as—
Amans, monens.

2. Participle in *dus* (the Gerundive), as—
Amandus.

3. Perfect in *us*, as—
Amatus.

4. Future in *rus*, as—
Amaturus.

They are arranged in this order for the sake of their being more easily formed, as follows :

1. *The Present Participle* is formed from the present tense by changing *o* into *ans* or *ens*, as *amo*, *amans*; *rego*, *regens*.

N.B.—In the Second Congugation it will be by changing *eo* into *ens*, as *moneo*, *monens*.

2. *The Participle in dus* (Gerundive) is formed from the present Participle by throwing away *s* and adding *dus*, as *amans*, *amandus*; *regens*, *regendus*.

2. *The Perfect Participle* is formed from the Supine in *um* by changing *um* into *us*, as *amatum*, *amatus*; *rectum*, *rectus*.

4. *The Future Participle* is formed from the Supine in *u* by adding *rus*, as *amatu*, *amaturus*; *rectu*, *recturus*.

N.B.—It will be seen that before the Participles can be formed in this way the Supines must be known.

II.

These Participles are also classed in another way :

Two Active—

1. Present in *ans* or *ens*.
2. Future in *rus*.

Two Passive.

1. Perfect in *us*.
2. Participle in *dus*.

THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

I.

The Present Participle is used in Latin Prose to express continuous action, as—

The boy went, carrying his books with him.

Puer ibat gerens suos libros secum.

That is, he was carrying his books *all the time* he was going.

II.

It must not be used to express a single instantaneous action, as—

Drawing his sword (—really, “*having drawn his sword*”), *the king attacked the enemy.*

Use stricto (or) *quum ensem strinxisset* (*not ensem stringens*) *rex impetum fecit in hostes.*

III.

The pupil will hardly require to be reminded that though *ing* is the ending of the Present Participle, yet that a word may end in "*ing*" and yet not be translated by a *Present Participle* in Latin, as—

1. *Learning is useful. Learning* here will be translated by the Infinitive Mood, *discere*.

2. *The love of hunting. Of hunting* will be the Genitive Gerund, *Venandi*; or the Substantive *Venationis*.
3. *We learn by teaching. By teaching* will, of course be the Ablative Gerund.

PARTICIPLE IN DUS.

This has been fully explained as *The Gerundive*, pp. 98, 99.

THE PERFECT PARTICIPLE PASSIVE.

I.

The *Perfect Participle Passive* is the one most frequently found in Latin, as *Amatus loved, having been loved*. It is also the Participle generally used in the Ablative Absolute.

Cæsar having been made consul departed.

Cæsar factus consul abiit.

Cæsar, Brutus having been made consul, departed.

Cæsar, Bruto facto consule, abiit.

II.

We must remember that Intransitive Verbs have no *Perf. Part. Pass.*, such as "*ventus*" from "*venio*," and that the *Perf. Part.* of a Dependent Verb, means *having* (and not *having been*), as *usus*, having used from *utor*.

FUTURE PARTICIPLE.

I.

The *Future Part*: always ends in *urus* and the English is "about to," "going to," "intending to," and also simply "to" *Amaturus*, "*about to love*," "*going to love*," "*intending to love*," or simply, "*to love*," with, of course, a future meaning.

II.

This *Future Part*: is used with the Infinitive of the Verb

II.

sum to form the *Future Infinitive Active*.

The boy said that he would come.
Puer dixit se venturum esse.

III.

This *Future Part*: is sometimes used to *express a purpose* instead of *ut* with the *Subjunctive*.

The boy goes away to consult his father.

Puer abit consulturus patrem.

THE GERUNDIVE.

I.

The Gerundive is another name, and no doubt a more correct one, for the old-fashioned *Participle in dus*. It is of like form with the *Gerund*, hence the name *Gerundive*. It is sometimes used in place of the *Gerund*—

Puer est studiosus *audiendi* patrem.
The boy is very desirous of hearing his father.

Here we have the *Genitive Gerund* with the *Accusative Case* after it, but instead of this the *Gerundive* may be used. We put our Substantive in the case we want it to be (here *his father* will be the *Genitive*) and make our *Gerundive* agree with it. 143.

Puer est studiosus *patris audiendi*.
 Rex interfectus est in *liberandâ urbe*.

This is called the *Gerundive Attraction*, and should only be used when the Verb governs the *Accusative*.

II.

The English of the *Gerundive* with *sum* is “is to be,” “is meet to be,” “must be.”

Amandus est, *He is to be loved, must be loved, is meet to be loved.*

III.

When the word *must* has to be turned into Latin we must generally use the *Gerundive* in agreement with the Substantive, provided the Verb governs an *Accusative*. 144 (IV. 2.)

The gate must be shut.
 Porta claudenda est.

The food must be taken.
 Cibus sumendus est.

The state must be ruled.
 Respublica regenda est

IV.

When the *Gerundive* of *neuter* or *intransitive* Verbs, as “live,” “die,” has to be used, it must be used Impersonally in the *neuter Gender* with “est,” and what might be supposed to be the *Nominative Case* is to be turned into the *Dative*. 144 (IV, I. a.)

We must live well.
 Bene vivendum est nobis.

I must live well.
 Bene vivendum est mihi.

He must live well.
 Bene vivendum est illi.

The boy must live well
 Puer bene vivendum est.

V.

When the English Nominative means "*we*," or "*people in general*," it is generally left out.

We must live well.

Bene vivendum est (nobis).

We must die.

Moriendum est (nobis).

VI.

If this Gerundive comes from a Verb which governs the Dative Case (as *credo*), the sentence is a little more puzzling, as there will then be two Datives in the sentence—the Dative after the Gerundive (Agent) and the Dative of the Object after the Verb. 144 (IV. 1, b).

We must believe good people.

i.e.,

Good people *must be believed* by us.
Credendum est nobis bonis hominibus.

But in instances of this kind, where the sense would be doubtful, the agent is sometimes expressed by *a* or *ab* with the Ablative, as—

A nobis credendum est bonis hominibus.

Sometimes, however, the agent may be left out (see v.) where its omission can cause no ambiguity, and the sentence stand,

Credendum est bonis hominibus.

VII.

Let the pupil study well these sentences, of which we give both the Latin and the English.

We must labour.

Laborandum est (nobis).

The wicked must die.

Improbis moriendum est.

We must believe.

Credendum est (nobis).

We must believe the wise.

Credendum est sapientibus.

(Dat. of Object.)

We must read the book.

Liber legendus est nobis,

We must fear the wicked

Improbi nobis timendi sunt.

The wicked must fear.

Improbis metuendum est.

We must pardon the boys.

Ignoscendum est pueris

(Dat. of Object.)

VIII.

"Must" and "ought," are to be expressed in Latin, however, sometimes by the Impersonal Verb *oportet*—

We ought to—we must—believe you
Oportet nos credere vobis.

Or by *necesse est*, it is necessary,

We must obey our parents.

Necesse est nobis parere parentibus.

IX.

There are yet, however, other senses in which *must* is used, and the Latin will therefore be altogether different—

You must hear me, i.e., nothing shall prevent your hearing me.

Nihil obstat quominus audias me.

ACCUSATIVE CASE AND INFINITIVE MOOD.

This form of expression, like that of the *Ablative Absolute*, is also one which beginners are very slow to learn, but a few words of explanation and example should make it plain.

This *Accusative and Infinitive* is called *Enuntiatio obliqua* or *Oblique (Indirect) Enunciation*, or *statement*.

The Latin Primer Rule is—

“The Subject of an Infinitive is put in the Accusative.”

It having been just previously stated that

“The Subject of a Finite Verb is a Nominative.”

And the two examples it gives are—

Anni fugiunt. Years flee.
Constat annos fugere. It is evident that years flee.
 (Latin Primer, 93. 1, 2.)

In the first example we have a Finite Verb (*fugiunt*) with the Nominative (*anni*); and in the second example we have the Infinitive Verb (Verb in the Infinitive Mood) with the Accusative *annos*.

As with the *Ablative Absolute* it will be well to take this as found in Latin, that the Pupil may first learn how to construe it when he sees it in a Latin Sentence. This will enable him also to know how to turn the *Oblique Enunciation* into Latin, though here again the more difficult thing will be to know when to use the Accusative and Infinitive, and when to use *ut* with the Subjunctive Mood.

Let us look carefully at the following sentence, and see how we ought to construe it.

Videmus aves auctumno in alias terras migrare.

We see that birds migrate into other lands in autumn.

Here we have an Accusative Case (*aves*), and an Infinitive Mood (*migrare*). We take *videmus*, according to the old, but never-to-be-forgotten, rule—“*Take the Nominative Case, first, and, if there is not one, take the Verb, and put in a Nominative;*”—then we will

take *aves*, as the Accusative Case, and Subject of the Infinitive Mood *migrare*; before the Accusative Case, we will put in the most important word "THAT"; and, as *migrare* is the Present Infinitive, we will construe it as if it were the Third Person Plural of the Present Indicative—*videmus*, *we see aves that birds migrare migrate*.

In turning such a Sentence into Latin — *We see that birds migrate*, we leave out the word "*that*," turn what might be the Nominative into the Accusative, and put the Verb in the Infinitive Mood; instead of, as learners might think they were to do, using "*ut*" with the Subjunctive.

But here sometimes is the difficulty—the knowing when to use the Accusative and Infinitive, and when to use "*ut*" with the Subjunctive. The explanation however that seems most satisfactory is—

When before the word "that" in English you can insert the words "as a matter of fact,"

then in Latin the *Accusative with Infinitive* is used, as—

1. They say (as a matter of fact that the earth is round.

Aiunt TERRAM ESSE rotundam.

3. It is certain (as a matter of fact) that the earth moves round the sun.

Constat TERRAM MOVERI circum solem.

3. We believe (as a matter of fact) that God is the Creator of all things.

Credimus DEUM ESSSE Creatorem omnium rerum.

But we enter more particularly into this in the following pages, which we head with the word "THAT."

Reverting, however, for a moment to the mode of construing such sentences as we have given, we see that in all these we have first to put in the word "*that*," take the Accusative Case as if it were a Nominative, then take the Infinitive Mood and construe it, as if it were the Indicative Mood. And as in the *first* and *third* sentences the Accusative comes before *esse* (as the Subject), we take care to have the Accusative after *esse* (as the Complement).

"THAT" AND "UT."

There are two common ways of expressing "THAT" in Latin—

1. Accusative and Infinitive.

We hear that the boy is sick.
Audimus puerum esse ægrium.

2. "Ut" with the Subj.

The boy is so idle that he has learned nothing.

Puer est tam ignavus ut didicerit nihil.

But when to express "that" by the Accusative and Infinitive, and when by "ut" with the Subjunctive, is no doubt very puzzling. We give here some very simple rules and explanations.

I.

Use the Acc. and Infin. after Verbs of saying, thinking, knowing, hearing, perceiving, &c., and with such words as *constat*, *manifestum est*, *fama est*, &c., &c.

The boy says } that he has learned
The boy thinks } many things well.

It is certain } that the boy has learned
It is evident } many things well.

Puer dicit } *Se didicisse multa bene.*
Puer putat }

Constat puerum didicisse multa bene.

II.

"*Ut*" with the Subjunctive however, is used generally after

Accidit, it happens.
Reliquum est, it remains.
Sequitur, it follows.

And many other like words.

Accidit ut puer puniatur.
Reliquum est ut puer eat domum.
Sequitur ut puer sit domi.

III.

When "to," the ordinary sign of the Infinitive, can be turned into "that," "in order that," it expresses a purpose and must be rendered by "*ut*" with the Subjunctive, as—

The boy was sent to school to learn
(i.e., that, in order that, he might learn, i.e., for the purpose of learning).

Puer missus est ad ludum ut disceret.

IV.

After "so" and "such," "*ut*" with the Subjunctive is used to express a consequence.

The boy is so idle that he has learned nothing.

Puer est tam ignavus ut didiceri nihil

V.

The word “*that*” is also used after Verbs of *doubting*, if preceded by a negative or a question, &c., in which case it must be translated by “*quin*,” and “*quin*” takes the Subjunctive ;

There is no doubt { *that the boy loves*
Who doubts { *his mother very*
 much.

Non est dubium { *quin (=qui non)*
Quis dubitat { *puer amet matr-*
 em valde.

VI.

When “*that not*” can be turned into “*lest*,” it is called a *negative PURPOSE*, and must be translated by “*ne*.”

The boy is sent to school that he may
not be ignorant of letters.

Puer mittitur ad ludum ne (that not,
lest) sit ignarus literarum.

But when “*that not*” is used to express a *negative CONSEQUENCE*, “*ut non*” must be used.

He was so idle as not to learn many
things.

Erat tam ignavus ut non disceret multa

VII.

When there is a comparative in the dependent clause, the word “*that*” must be translated by “*quo*,” and requires the Subjunctive, as—

The boy is punished that he may be
the more industrious.

Puer punitur quo sit diligentior.

VIII.

With words of fearing, “*ne*” and “*ut*” seem to exchange places ; “*that*” must be translated by “*ne*” “*that not*” by “*ut*,” as—

I fear that the boy will not come.

Vereor ut puer veniat.

I fear that the boy will come, i.e., I
am afraid lest he come.

Vereor ne puer veniat.

IX.

After words expressing *hindrance* use *quominus* with the Subjunctive,

What prevents the boy from going
home ?

Quid obstat quominus puer eat
domum ?

X.

It has been said that when “*that*” introduces a *purpose*, it must be translated by “*ut*” with the *Subjunctive* ; but sometimes the idea of *purpose* is not clearly brought out in the English sentence, as, *e.g.*, after the Verbs—

Advise, ask, command (not jubeo),
Exhort, beg, strive (not conor),

where, nevertheless, a *purpose* is implied, and therefore “*ut*” with the *Subjunctive* is used, as—

Moneo te ut bene vivas.

I advise you to live well.

Impero tibi ut bene vivas.

I command you to live well.

OBLIQUE STATEMENT.

An Oblique Statement is ordinarily formed by the Infinitive Clause (Accusative with Infinitive) and depends on an Impersonal Verb, or a Verb of *declaring, thinking, perceiving, &c.*

In Oblique Statement all the *principal* Verbs will stand in the Infinitive Mood, whereas all the *Subordinate* Verbs, *i.e.*, the Verbs in the Subordinate Clauses (provided they express the words and opinions of the original speaker) will be in the Subjunctive.

Cæsar "Plura sunt" inquit "quæ volo dicere tibi." (Direct.)

Cæsar said, "There are more things which I wish to mention to you."

Here *Sunt* is the principal Verb and *Volo* the Subordinate Verb ; therefore in Oratio Obliqua the sentence will run thus—

Cæsar dixit plura esse quæ vellet dicere ei. (Oblique.)

Cæsar said, that there were more things which he wished to mention to him.

QUI.

Qui requires the Subjunctive when there is implied—

- (1.) *In order that*, Litteras scripsi quibus (= tu iis) puerum. monerem.
- (2.) *Since*, Pudet me tui qui (= quum tu) tam ignavus sis.
- (3.) *Such that*, Sunt qui (= ejusmodi ut) discant multa.
- (4.) *Although*, Ego, qui (= quamvis ego) senex sim, disco multa.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Many pages might here be written on the Subjunctive Mood, but we will be content with giving the principal conjunctions which are followed by the Subjunctive Mood.

I.

CONSECUTIVE—*ut, so that; quin, but that.*

The boy is so foolish that he knows nothing.

Puer est ita stultus ut nihil sciat.

There is no doubt but that these things are true.

Non est dubium quin (=ut non) hæc vera sint.

Who is there who does not weep?

Quis est quin (=qui non) fleat?

II.

FINAL—*ut, in order that. Quo, in order that.*

ne, lest, that not. Quominus, but that.

I will strive to conquer, i.e. in order that I may conquer.

Enitar ut vincam.

I will strive that you may not conquer (i.e. lest you should).

Enitar ne vincas.

I will strive in order that I may conquer the more easily.

Enitar quo facilius vincam.

What hinders me from conquering (i.e. but that I may conquer)?

Quid obstat quominus (=ut eo minus) vincam?

III.

CAUSAL—*quum, since.*

Since these things are so, I will go.

Quæ quum ita sint, ibo.

IV.

CONDITIONAL—*Dum, modo, dummodo, provided that.*

The general will conquer provided that he fears nothing.

Dux vincet dum nihil metuat.

V.

CONCESSIVE—*Licet, quamvis, ut, although.*

Although those things are true, I will not go.

Ut ea vera sint non ibo.

VI.

COMPARATIVE—*Tanquam, ceu, velut, quasi, as if.*

You talk as if I were foolish.

Loqueris tanquam stultus sim.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

I.

Impersonal Verbs are those which have no Personal Pronoun as Subject, and are used only in the Third Person Singular (Ind. and Conj.) and in the Infinitive Mood.

It hails, grandinat.

It vexes me, me piget.

For the Conjugation of Impersonal Verbs see pp. 61, 62, of the *Latin Primer*.

II.

The greater number of the Impersonal Verbs are of the second conjugation. We give those that are most commonly used.

I. Conjugation.

Delectat, it delights.

Juvat, it delights.

Constat, it is evident.

Tonat, it thunders.

Fulgurat, it lightens.

Grandinat, it hails.

II.—Conjugation.

Oportet, it behoves.

Decet, it becomes.

Dedecet, it is unseemly.

Piget, it irks.

Pudet, it shames.

Pœnitet, it repents.

Tædet, it disgusts.

Miseret, it moves pity.

Libet, it pleases.

Licet, it is lawful.

Liquet, it is clear.

Attinet, it relates.

Pertinet, it belongs.

III. Conjugation.

Accidit, it happens.

Contingit, it befalls

Ningit, it snows.

Pluit, it rains.

Lucescit, it dawns.

Vesperascit, it grows late.

IV. Conjugation.

Convenit, it suits.

Evenit, it turns out.

Expediit, it is expedient.

Irregular.

Interest, it imports.

Refert, it concerns.

III.

Intransitive Verbs also, and Verbs which take a Dative Case after them if used in the Passive Voice, are used impersonally

There is playing by me, or I play.

Luditur a me.

I am believed. Creditur mihi.

IV.

The Neuter of the Gerundive is often used impersonally.

I must play.—There must be playing by me. Ludendum est mihi.

V.

In using Impersonal Verbs the different persons, *I, thou, he, &c.*, are expressed by the different cases the Verbs take after them.

The following are used with the Accusative Case—

Decet.	Juvat.	Piget.
Dedecet.	Oportet.	Pœnitet.
Delectat.	Miseret.	Pudet.
	Tædet.	

as

Oportet me ire, *it behoves me to go, or I ought to go.*

Oportet te ire " *you* " *you* "

Oportet eum ire " *him* " *he* "

&c. &c. &c. &c.

VI.

The following are used with the Dative Case—

Libet. Licet. Accidit. Contingit. Evenit. Convenit. Expedit.

as

Licet mihi ire, *it is allowed me to go, or I may go.*

Licet tibi ire " *you* " *you* "

Licet ei ire " *him* " *he* "

&c. &c. &c. &c.

VII.

Intransitive Verbs when used impersonally in the Passive Voice sometimes have the Ablative and Preposition, to express the person, as—

Luditur a me, *there is playing by me, or I play.*

Luditur a te " *you* " *you* *play.*

Luditur ab eo " *him* " *he* *plays.*

&c. &c. &c. &c.

But this Ablative is often left out.

VIII.

Interest, refert, are used with the Genitive as also with the Possessive Cases, *meā, tuā, suā, nostrā, vestrā.* 129 (III. a).

Regis interest facere recte.

Regis refert facere recte,

It imports (it concerns) the king to act rightly.

See also p. II.

Et tuā et meā interest te valere,

It is both to your interest and mine that you should be well.

IX.

The Impersonals—

Fulgurat, *it lightens.*

Pluit, *it rains.*

Luscescit, *it dawns.*

Tonat, *it thunders.*

Grandinat, *it hails.*

Vesperascit, *it gets late*

Ningit, *it snows*

are of course not used with any Personal or other Object.

MODE OF ASKING QUESTIONS.

The Interrogative Pronoun “quis” asks a question, as—

Quis homo est? *Who is the man?*
 Quæ sunt illæ puellæ? *Who are those girls?*
 Quid agis? *What are you doing?*
 Quid est nomen tibi? *What is your name?*
 Cujus est hic liber? *Whose is this book?*

Such words also, as—

Quando, <i>when?</i>	Quo, <i>whither?</i>
Ubi, <i>When?</i>	Quorsum, <i>whitherward?</i>
Quamdiu, <i>how long?</i>	Unde, <i>whence?</i>
Quoties, <i>how often?</i>	Qua, <i>which way?</i>
Ubi, <i>where?</i>	Quatenus, <i>how far?</i>
Quousque, <i>how far?</i>	

are all of them Interrogatives, but they can ask only particular questions, as—

Quo curris? *Whither do you run?*
 Quando redibis? *When will you return?*
 Quoties dixisti hoc? *How often have you said this?*
 &c., &c., &c.

I.

But in asking questions in Latin the word *ne* is frequently used, in much the same way that we use the note of Interrogation in (?) English; no English is to be given to it, as—

Videsne, puer?
Do you see, boy?

II.

If there is a *non* in the sentence *ne* will come at the end of *non*, and will thus make *nonne*, as—

Nonne est puer diligens ?
Is not the boy industrious ?

From the very wording of the sentence, it will be seen that the answer “yes” is expected—*nonne* therefore is said to be a sign of a question when the answer “yes” is expected.

III.

Num is put when the answer “no” is expected, and, like *ne*, must not be translated, as—

Num est puer diligens ?
Is the boy industrious ?

Here, however, the answer “no” being expected, the question may be turned so as to show this—and the words rendered not simply—

Is the boy industrious ?

to which “yes” or “no” is applicable, but—

The boy is not industrious, is he ?

to which it is clearly seen that the answer “no” is expected.

IV.

When there is a double question asked, *Utrum*, “whether,” (or *num* or *ne*), is used, followed by *an*, “or,” as—

Utrum est puer an puella diligentior ?

Whether is the boy or the girl more industrious ?

Utrum need not, however, be translated, as it is quite enough to say—

Is the boy or girl more industrious ?

Neither, indeed, need *Utrum* be put in in Latin, but it may be left out in the same way as “whether” is left out in English, for it matters not whether we say—

Utrum est puer an puella diligentior ?

or

Est puer an puella diligentior ?

V.

In indirect questions the Verb is put in the Subj. Mood—

He asks who you are.
Rogat quis sis.

He asks whether the boy or girl is more industrious.

Rogat utrum puer an puella sit diligentior

PRONOUNS.

There are Eight kinds of Pronouns—

- | | |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1. Personal. | 5. Definitive. |
| 2. Reflexive. | 6. Relative. |
| 3. Possessive. | 7. Interrogative. |
| 4. Demonstrative. | 8. Indefinite. |

1. Personal Pronouns are—

- | | |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| 1. Ego, <i>I</i> . | 3. Nos, <i>We</i> . |
| 2. Tu, <i>Thou</i> . | 4. Vos, <i>Ye</i> . |

2. Reflexive—

Se (sese), *himself, herself, itself, themselves.*

3. Possessive—

1. Meus, *my, mine.*
2. Tuus, *thy, thine, your.*
3. Suus, *his own, her own, &c.*
4. Cujus, a, um, *whose.*
5. Noster, *our.*
6. Vester, *your.*

4. Demonstrative—

1. Is, *that (he, she, it).*
2. Hic, *this (near me).*
3. Ille, *that (yonder).*
4. Iste, *that (near you).*

5. Definitive—

Idem, *same.* Ipse, *self.*

6. Relative—

Qui, *who or which.*

7. Interrogative—

Quis, *who or what?*

8. Indefinite—

Quis, *any one.*

N.B. 2 D's, 2 I's, 2 R's, 2 P's,
Will give the Pronouns eight
with ease.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

I.

The Personal Pronouns, *ego, tu, nos, vos*, and the Demonstrative Pronouns, *ille, illi*, are sometimes used as the Nominative Case to the Verb where no other Nominative is expressed or evidently understood.

Amo means *Ego amo, I love.*
 Amas „ *Tu amas, Thou lovest.*
 Amat „ *Ille amat, He loves.*
 Amamus „ *Nos amamus, We love.*
 Amatis „ *Vos amatis, Ye love.*
 Amant „ *Illi amant, They love.*

II.

But this Personal Pronoun is not generally expressed, except for the purpose of emphasis.

I am walking in the garden,
 Ambulo (not *ego ambulo*) in horto.

III.

But if I wish to show some distinction between what *I* am doing and what *somebody else* is doing, I must use *ego*.

I am walking in the garden, you are sitting in the house.
Ego ambulo in horto, tu sedes in domo.

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS.

The Reflexive Pronoun *se* is often misunderstood, and therefore misplaced.

The master said "that he" was writing.

The master praised the boy and said "that he" was good.

In the first sentence the man is speaking of himself, so we must use "*se*." In the second sentence the man is speaking of the boy, so we must use "*eum*."

Magister dixit se scribere.

Magister laudavit puerum et dixit eum esse bonum.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

I.

The Possessive Pronouns, like Adjectives, agree with their Substantives, and THAT ALONE.

He was reading his book.

She was reading her book.

They were reading their book.

Must be all turned into *suum* librum.

II.

Notice the difference between *ejus*, and *suus*.

The boy was reading his (own) book.

Puer legebat suum librum.

The boy was sitting near his brother and reading his book.

Puer sedebat prope fratrem et legebat ejus (i.e., his brother's) librum.

III.

Note that "you" in English is both singular and plural *tu* and *vos*; and "your" is both "*tuus*" and "*vester*,"—be careful whether you are speaking to, or of one person or more than one.

What are you doing, my boy?

Quid agis, puer?

What are you doing, my boys?

Quid agitis, pueri?

Soldier, hasten your flight.

Miles, matura tuam fugam.

Soldiers, hasten your flight.

Milites, maturate vestram fugam.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

The distinction between *hic*, *ille* and *iste* must be remembered: *hic* means "this near me," *ille* "that yonder," pointing at something at some distance, and *iste*, "that of yours, or that by you."

Boy, do you see this book?

Videsne hunc librum, puer?

Boy, give me that book (yonder).

Da mihi illum librum, puer.

Boy, give me that book of yours (near you).

Da mihi istum librum puer

PREPOSITIONS.

I.

The Preposition must stand—

1. Either immediately before the word that it governs.
2. Or before the Adjective agreeing with that word.
3. Or before a Genitive depending on that word.

Milites ibant trans agros hostium.

Milites ibant trans fertiles agros hostium.

Milites ibant trans hostium fertiles agros.

Tenus, however, *follows* its case, which is sometimes a Genitive. So also do *versus* and *versum*.

II.

A, *ab* for *by* is used of an Agent, but not to express the instrument.

The man was killed by me.

Vir occisus est a me (agent).

The man was killed by a stone.

Vir occisus est lapide (instrument).

Ad is used after Verbs of motion, but not before names of Towns, etc.

He was going to the city.

Ibat ad urbem.

He was going to Rome.

Ibat Romam.

III.

Cum is not used ordinarily for “with,” unless it may be turned into “together with,” “along with,”—

The king went with (together with) *his legions.*

Rex ivit cum legionibus.

The king fought with his sword.

Rex pugnavit gladio.

In (in) is used before ordinary words, but not before a *name of a Town*, or a Noun denoting *Time when*, as—

The king was sitting in the garden.

Rex sedebat in horto.

The king was fighting in Italy.

Rex pugnabat in Italia.

The king was living in Carthage (i.e. at Carthage).

Rex vivebat Carthagine.

In winter the cold is intense.

Hieme frigus est magnum.

In, when it is followed by the Abl. signifies *rest in*

Sedeo in domo.

In, when it is followed by the Acc., signifies *motion into*, or *on to* or *to*,

Festino in domum.

For list of Prepositions, see p. 58.

PART III. IRREGULAR VERBS.

PART III. IRREGULAR VERBS.

CONTENTS.

	PAGE		PAGE
1. Irregular Verbs, Conj. I.	117	14. Verbs with no Perfect	132
2. Irregular Verbs, Conj. II.	117	15. Verbs with no Supine	133
3. Irregular Verbs, Conj. III.—		16. Verbs with neither Perfect nor Supine	134
(a) Perfect <i>xi</i> , Supine <i>tum</i>	119	17. Verbs with two Supines	134
(b) „ <i>xi</i> , „ <i>xum</i>	119	18. Two or more Supines from the same Verb	135
(c) „ <i>si</i> , „ <i>sum</i>	119	19. <i>Supines</i> somewhat similar from different Verbs	136
(d) „ <i>si</i> , „ <i>tum</i>	120	20. <i>Perfects</i> somewhat similar that come from different Verbs	137
(e) „ <i>psi</i> , „ <i>ptum</i>	120	21. Principal Inceptive Verbs	139
(f) „ <i>ui</i> , „ <i>tum</i>	120	1. With Perfect and Supine.	
(g) „ <i>ui</i> , No Supine	121	2. With Perfect only.	
(h) „ <i>vi</i> , Supine <i>tum</i>	121	3. Without Perfect or Supine.	
(i) „ with Reduplica- tion; Supine <i>tum</i> , <i>sum</i>	122	22. Frequentative Verbs	140
(k) Perfect <i>di</i> , Supine <i>sum</i>	123	23. Desiderative Verbs	140
(l) Compounds of <i>do</i>	123	24. Impersonal Verbs	141
(m) Verbs that cannot be arranged under previous headings	123	25. Impersonals relating to the weather	142
4. Verbs in <i>io</i> of Conj. III.	124	26. Specimen of an Impersonal Verb in full	142
5. Irregular Verbs, Conj. IV.	125	27. Anomalous Verbs	142
6. Principal Neuter Verbs	125	28. Irregularities of Edo	143
7. Principal Verbs both Active and Neuter	126	29. Defective Verbs	143
8. Deponent Verbs—		30. <i>Fari</i> , <i>to speak</i>	145
1. Regular.	127	31. Age, Ave, etc.	145
2. Irregular	128	32. Irregular Verbs (alphabetically arranged)	146–151
9. Quasi-Passives and Semi- Deponents	129		
10. Compounds of <i>Sum</i>	130		
11. „ <i>Eo</i>	130		
12. Verbs similar in spelling	131		
13. „ with different meanings	132		

PART III. IRREGULAR VERBS.

*It is to be noted throughout that forms thus marked * occur only in compounds.*

IRREGULAR VERBS—CONJUGATION I.

Creπο	crepui	crepitum	<i>creak.</i>
Cubo	cubui	cubitum	<i>lie.</i>
Domo	domui	domitum	<i>tame.</i>
Mico	micui	—	<i>glitter.</i>
Plico	*plicui	*plicitum	<i>fold.</i>
Sono	sonui	sonitum	<i>sound.</i>
Tono	tonui	tonitum	<i>thunder.</i>
Veto	vetui	vetitum	<i>forbid.</i>
Seco	secui	sectum	<i>cut.</i>
Do	dēdi	dātum	<i>give.</i>
Sto	stēti	statum	<i>stand.</i>
Jūvo	jūvi	jutum	<i>help.</i>
Lāvo	lāvi	lotum	<i>wash.</i>

IRREGULAR VERBS—CONJUGATION II.

Deleo	delēvi	delētum	<i>blot out.</i>
Fleo	flēvi	fletum	<i>weep.</i>
*Pleo	*plēvi	*pletum	<i>fill.</i>
Neo	nevi	netum	<i>spin.</i>
Ardeo	arsi	arsum	<i>take fire.</i>
Fulgeo	fulsi	—	<i>glitter.</i>
Hæreo	hæsi	hæsum	<i>stick.</i>
Jubeo	jussi	jussum	<i>command.</i>

Maneo	mansi	mansum	<i>remain.</i>
Mulceo	mulsi	mulsum	<i>soothe.</i>
Rideo	risi	risum	<i>laugh.</i>
Suadco	suasi	suasum	<i>advise.</i>
Urgeo	ursi	—	<i>press.</i>
Lugeo	luxi	—	<i>mourn.</i>
Luceo	luxi	—	<i>shine.</i>
Mordeo	momordi	morsum	<i>bite.</i>
Pendeo	pependi	pensum	<i>hang. (intr.)</i>
Spondeo	spopondi	sponsum	<i>pledge.</i>
Tondeo	totondi	tonsum	<i>shear.</i>
Prandeo	prandi	pransum	<i>lunch.</i>
Sēdeo	sēdi	sessum	<i>sit.</i>
Vīdeo	vīdi	visum	<i>see.</i>
Fōveo	fōvi	fōtum	<i>cherish.</i>
Mōveo	mōvi	mōtum	<i>move.</i>
Vōveo	vōvi	vōtum	<i>vow.</i>
Cāveo	cāvi	cautum	<i>beware.</i>
Fāveo	fāvi	fautum	<i>favour.</i>
Doceo	docui	doctum	<i>teach.</i>
Misceo	miscui	{ mistum } { mixtum }	<i>mix.</i>
Torreo	torrui	tostum	<i>roast</i>
Teneo	tenui	tentum	<i>hold.</i>
Angeo	auxi	auctum	<i>increase. (trans.)</i>
Indulgeo	indulsi	indultum	<i>be indulgent.</i>
Torqueo	torsi	tortum	<i>twist.</i>
Audeo	ausus sum	} semi- deponent.	{ dare. rejoice. be wont.
Gaudeo	gavisus sum		
Solco	solitus sum		

CONJUGATION III.

All the Verbs of the Third Conjugation are of themselves so irregular that they require to be classed in some such way as the following.

I. PERFECT *xi*, SUPINE *tum*.

Cingo	cinxī	cinctum	<i>surround.</i>
Coquo	coxi	coctum	<i>cook.</i>
Dico	dixi	dictum	<i>say.</i>
Duco	duxi	ductum	<i>lead.</i>
Fingo	finxi	fictum	<i>fashion.</i>
Jungo	junxi	junctum	<i>join.</i>
Pingo	pinxi	pietum	<i>paint.</i>
Rego	rexī	rectum	<i>rule.</i>
*Stinguo	*stinxi	*stinctum	<i>quench.</i>
Struo	struxi	structum	<i>pile.</i>
Tego	texi	tectum	<i>cover.</i>
Tinguo	tinxi	tinctum	<i>dye.</i>
Traho	traxi	tractum	<i>draw.</i>
Unguo	unxi	unctum	<i>anoint.</i>
Veho	vexi	vectum	<i>carry.</i>
Vivo	vixi	victum	<i>live.</i>

II. PERFECT *xi*, SUPINE *xum*.

Figo	fixi	fixum	<i>fix.</i>
Flecto	flexi	flexum	<i>bend.</i>
Fluo	fluxi	fluxum	<i>flow.</i>
Necto	nexi (nexui)	nexum	<i>bind.</i>

III. PERFECT *si*, SUPINE *sum*.

Cedo	cessi	cessum	<i>yield.</i>
Claudo	clausi	clausum	<i>shut.</i>
Divido	divisi	divisum	<i>divide.</i>

Lædo	læsi	læsum	<i>hurt.</i>
Ludo	lusi	lusum	<i>play.</i>
Mergo	mersi	mersum	<i>drown.</i>
Mitto	misi	missum	<i>send.</i>
Plaudo	plausi	plausum	<i>applaud.</i>
Premo	pressi	pressum	<i>press.</i>
Rado	rasi	rasum	<i>scrape.</i>
Rodo	rosi	rosum	<i>gnaw.</i>
Spargo	sparsi	sparsum	<i>sprinkle.</i>
Tergo	tersi	tersum	<i>wipe.</i>
Trudo	trusi	trusum	<i>thrust.</i>
Vado	*vasi	*vasum	<i>go.</i>
Vello	vulsi (velli)	vulsum	<i>pluck.</i>

IV. PERFECT *si*, SUPINE *tum*.

Gero	gessi	gestum	<i>carry on.</i>
Uro	ussi	ustum	<i>burn.</i>

V. PERFECT *psi*, SUPINE *ptum*.

Carpo	carpsi	carptum	<i>pluck.</i>
Como	compsi	comptum	<i>adorn.</i>
Demo	dempsi	demptum	<i>take away.</i>
Nubo	nupsi	nuptum	<i>be married.</i>
Promo	prompsi	promptum	<i>take forth.</i>
Repo	repsi	reptum	<i>creep.</i>
Scalpo	scalpsi	scalptum	<i>scratch.</i>
Scribo	scripsi	scriptum	<i>write.</i>
Serpo	serpsi	serptum	<i>crawl.</i>
Sumo	sumpsi	sumptum	<i>take.</i>
Temno	tempsi	temptum	<i>despise.</i>

VI. PERFECT *ui*, SUPINE *tum*.

Acuo	acui	acūtum	<i>sharpen.</i>
Alo	alui	altum (alītum)	<i>nourish.</i>
Arguo	argui	argutum	<i>prove.</i>

Colo	colui	cultum	<i>till.</i>
Consulo	consului	consultum	<i>consult.</i>
*Cumbo	*cubui	*cubitum	<i>lie down.</i>
Exuo	exui	exutum	<i>put off.</i>
Fremo	fremui	fremitum	<i>murmur.</i>
Gemo	gemui	gemitum	<i>groan.</i>
Gigno	genui	genitum	<i>produce.</i>
Imbuo	imbui	imbūtum	<i>tinge.</i>
Induo	indui	indutum	<i>put on.</i>
Luo	lui	lūtum	<i>wash, atone.</i>
Minuo	minui	minūtum	<i>lessen.</i>
Occulo	occului	occultum	<i>hide.</i>
Pono	posui	positum	<i>place.</i>
Ruo	rui	† rutum	<i>rush, fall.</i>
Sero	serui	sertum	<i>join.</i>
Statuo	statui	statūtum	<i>set up.</i>
Strepo	strepui	strepitum	<i>roar.</i>
Texo	texui	textum	<i>weave.</i>
Tribuo	tribui	tributum	<i>assign.</i>
Vomo	vomui	vomitum	<i>vomit.</i>

† The Primer gives ruitum as supine, and ruiturum occurs in *Ovid*, *Met.* iv. 460; but Andrews gives rutum. Cf. obrutus.

VII. PERFECT *ui*, NO SUPINE.

Metuo	metui	—	<i>fear.</i>
Nuo	nui	—	<i>nod.</i>
Tremo	tremui	—	<i>tremble.</i>
Volo	volui	—	<i>wish.</i>

VIII. PERFECT *vi*, SUPINE *tum*.

Arcesso	arcessivi	arcessitum	<i>send for.</i>
Cerno	crevi	cretum	<i>sift.</i>
Cresco	crevi	cretum	<i>grow.</i>
Lacesso	laccessivi	laccessitum	<i>provoke.</i>
Lino	levi	lītum	<i>smear.</i>
Nosco	novi (<i>I know</i>)	notum	<i>become acquainted with.</i>

Pasco	pavi	pastum	<i>feed.</i>
Peto	petivi	petitum	<i>ask.</i>
Quæro	quæsi	quæsitum	<i>seek.</i>
Quiesco	quievi	quietum	<i>rest.</i>
Sero	sevi	sātum	<i>sow.</i>
Sino	sīvi	sītum	<i>allow.</i>
Sperno	sprevi	spretum	<i>despise.</i>
Sterno	stravi	stratum	<i>strew.</i>
Suesco	suevi	suetum	<i>be wont.</i>
Tero	trivi	tritum	<i>rub.</i>

IX. PERFECT WITH REDUPLICATION: SUPINE *tum, sum*.

Cado	cecīdi	casum	<i>fall.</i>
Cædo	cecīdi	cæsum	<i>cut, beat, kill.</i>
Cano	cecīni	cantum	<i>sing.</i>
Curro	cucurri	cursum	<i>run.</i>
Fallo	fefelli	falsum	<i>deceive.</i>
Parco	peperci	parsum	<i>spare.</i>
Pango	pepigi	pactum	<i>fasten.</i>
Pario	peperi	partum	<i>bring forth.</i>
Pello	pepuli	pulsum	<i>drive.</i>
Pendo	pependi	pensum	<i>weigh.</i>
Pungo	pupugi	punctum	<i>prick.</i>
Tango	tetigi	tactum	<i>touch.</i>
Tendo	tetendi	tensum & tentum	<i>stretch.</i>
Tollo	sustuli	sublatum	<i>take up.</i>
Tundo	tutudi	tunsum	<i>thump.</i>

PERFECT WITH REDUPLICATION, NO SUPINE.

Disco	didici	—	<i>learn.</i>
Posco	poposci	—	<i>demand.</i>

X. PERFECT *di*, SUPINE *sūm*.

*Cando	*cendi	*censum	<i>set on fire.</i>
Ēdo	ēdi	esum	<i>eat.</i>
*Fendo	*fendi	*fensum	<i>strike.</i>
Findo	fīdi	fissum	<i>cleave.</i>
Fundo	fudi	fusum	<i>pour.</i>
Pando	pandi	pansum (passum)	<i>spread.</i>
Prehendo	prehendi	prehensum	<i>grasp.</i>
Scando	scandi	scansum	<i>climb.</i>
Scindo	scīdi	scissum	<i>tear.</i>

 XI. COMPOUNDS OF *do*: PERFECT *didi*, SUPINE *ditum*.

Abdo	abdīdi	abditum	<i>hide.</i>
Addo	-didi	-ditum	<i>add.</i>
Condo			<i>found, hide.</i>
Credo			<i>believe.</i>
Dedo			<i>give up.</i>
Edo			<i>give forth.</i>
Perdo			<i>lose.</i>
Prodo			<i>betray.</i>
Reddo			<i>restore.</i>
Subdo			<i>substitute.</i>
Trado			<i>deliver.</i>
Vendo			<i>sell.</i>

XII. VERBS THAT CANNOT BE ARRANGED UNDER PREVIOUS HEADINGS.

Ago	egi	actum	<i>do.</i>
Bibo	bibi	bibitum	<i>drink.</i>
Emo	ēmi	emptum	<i>buy, take.</i>
Frango	fregi	fractum	<i>break.</i>
Legō	legi	lectum	<i>choose, read.</i>
Linguo	liqui	*lictum	<i>leave.</i>
Meto	messui	messum	<i>to mow.</i>
Rumpo	rupi	ruptum	<i>break.</i>
Sisto	*stiti	*statum	<i>make to stand.</i>

Solvo ¹	solvi	solūtum	<i>loosen.</i>
Vello ²	velli & vulsi	vulsum	<i>pull.</i>
Verto	verti	versum	<i>turn.</i>
Vinco	vici	victum	<i>conquer.</i>
Volvo ¹	volvi	volūtum	<i>roll.</i>

¹ These might have been included in those making Perfect *vi*, Supine *tum*, but they only make *vi* because there is a *v* in the present.

² This because it also makes *vulsi* has been included in those making Perfect *si*, Supine *sum* (see p. 4).

VERBS IN **io** OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

Allicio	allexi	allectum	<i>allure.</i>
Capio	cēpi	captum	<i>take.</i>
Cupio	cupīvi	cupītum	<i>desire.</i>
Elicio	elicui	elicītum	<i>entice forth.</i>
Facio	feci	factum	<i>make.</i>
Fodio	fōdi	fossum	<i>dig.</i>
Fugio	fūgi	fugītum	<i>flee</i>
Jacio	jeci	jactum	<i>throw.</i>
Pario	peperi	partum	<i>bring forth.</i>
Quatio	quassi	quassum	<i>shake.</i>
Rapio	rapui	raptum	<i>seize.</i>
*Specio	*spexi	*spectum	<i>espy.</i>
Sapio	sapi(v)i	—	{ <i>to taste of, be</i> <i>wise.</i>

PECULIARITIES OF SOME COMPOUND VERBS.

REGO.

Surgo (sub-rego)	surrexi	surrectum	<i>arise.</i>
Pergo (per-rego)	perrexi	perrectum	<i>go on.</i>

LEGO.

Most of its compounds make -legi, -lectum. But diligo, intelligo, negligo, -lexi, -lectum.

The Compounds of Reduplicated Verbs seldom retain the reduplication, *e.g.*, occido (ob-cædo), occidi, except disco, posco, curro, do, sto.

IRREGULAR VERBS—CONJUGATION IV.

Aperio	aperui	apertum	<i>open.</i>
Operio	operui	opertum	<i>cover.</i>
Salio	salui	saltum	<i>leap.</i>
Sepelio	sepelivi	sepultum	<i>bury.</i>
Sancio	sanxi	sanctum	<i>consecrate.</i>
Vincio	vinxi	vinctum	<i>bind.</i>
Fulcio	fulsi	fultum	<i>prop.</i>
Haurio	hausi	haustum	<i>drain.</i>
Sarcio	sarsi	sartum	<i>mend.</i>
Sæpio	sæpsi	sæptum	<i>hedge in.</i>
Sentio	sensi	sensum	<i>feel.</i>
Comperio	comperi	compertum	<i>find.</i>
Reperio	repperi	reptum	<i>discover.</i>
Vēnio	vēni	ventum	<i>come.</i>

PRINCIPAL NEUTER VERBS.

Neuter Verbs indicate a *state* or an *action not exercised upon an object*: they take an accusative of kindred meaning, *e.g.* "Duram servit servitutum." There are exceptional uses in the poets, *e.g.*, "Ire vias." Prop. I. i. 18. "Currimus æquor." Virg. Æn. III. 191. Many of them too are followed by the accusative of part affected, *e.g.* tremit artus, dolet caput, etc.

Algeo	algēre	alsi	—	<i>be cold.</i>
Ambulo	ambulare	ambulavi	ambulatum	<i>walk.</i>
Ardeo	ardēre	arsi	arsum	<i>take fire.</i>
Caleo	calēre	calui	—	<i>be warm.</i>
Clango	clangēre	—	—	<i>resound.</i>

Conniveo	connivēre	{ connīvi connixi }	—	<i>shut the eyes.</i>
Curro	currēre	cucurri	cursum	<i>run.</i>
Cubo	cubare	cubui	cubitum	<i>lie.</i>
Eo	ire	īvi, ii	ītum	<i>go.</i>
Ferveo	{ fervēre fervēre }	{ ferbui fervi }	—	<i>boil.</i>
Floreo	florēre	florui	—	<i>flourish.</i>
Frigeo	frigēre	—	—	<i>be cold.</i>
Jaceo	jacēre	jacui	jacitum	<i>lie.</i>
No	nare	navi	—	<i>swim.</i>
Pendeo	pendēre	pependi	pensum	<i>hang.</i>
Salio	salire	salui	saltum	<i>leap.</i>
Sēdeo	sedēre	sēdi	sessum	<i>sit.</i>
Servio	servīre	servīvi(ii)	servitum	<i>serve.</i>
Sto	stare	stēti	statum	<i>stand.</i>
Vēnio	venire	vēni	ventum	<i>come.</i>
Vigeo	vigēre	—	—	<i>flourish.</i>
Vireo	virēre	—	—	<i>be green.</i>
Vivo	vivēre	vixi	victum	<i>live.</i>

PRINCIPAL VERBS WHICH ARE BOTH ACTIVE AND NEUTER.

Doleo	dolēre	dolui	dolitum	{ feel pain, grieve for.
Fleo	flēre	flevi	fletum	<i>weep, weep for.</i>
Gemo	gemēre	gemui	gemitum	<i>groan, sigh over.</i>
Horreo	horrēre	—	—	{ stand on end, shudder at.
Incipio	incipēre	incepti	inceptum	<i>begin.</i>
Lugeo	lugēre	luxi	—	<i>mourn, lament.</i>
Manco	manēre	mansi	mansum	<i>remain, await</i>

Ruo	ruĕre	ruī	rutum	{	rush, cast down or up.
Sapio	sapĕre	sapivi(ii)	—		be wise, know.
Sitio	sitire	sitivi(ii)	—	{	be thirsty, thirst for.
Tremo	tremĕre	tremui	—	{	tremble, tremble at.
Verto	vertĕre	verti	versum		turn.
Vigilo	vigilare	vigilavi	vigilatum	{	watch, watch through.

COMMON DEPONENT VERBS.

A. Regular.

Conj. I.	Arbitror	arbitrari	arbitratus sum	think.
	Miror	mirari	miratus sum	wonder at.
	Moror	„	„	delay.
	Spatior	„	„	walk.
	Testor	„	„	bear witness.
	Vagor	„	„	wander.
	Venor	„	„	hunt.

Conj. II.	Mereor	mereri	meritus sum	deserve.
	Misereor	„	„	pity.
	Polliceor	„	„	promise.
	Vereor	„	„	fear.

Conj. III.	Utor	uti	usus sum	use.
------------	------	-----	----------	------

Mostly classed with the irregular verbs.

Conj. IV.	Partior	partiri	partitus sum	divide.
-----------	---------	---------	--------------	---------

PRINCIPAL DEPONENT VERBS.

*B. Irregular.**Conjugation II.*

Fateor	fatēri	fassus sum	<i>confess.</i>
Medeor	mederi	———	<i>heal.</i>
Reor	rerī	ratus sum	<i>think.</i>

Conjugation III.

Amplector	amplecti	amplexus sum	<i>embrace.</i>
Apiscor	apisci	aptus sum	<i>obtain.</i>
Comminiscor	comminisci	commentus sum	<i>devise.</i>
Expergiscor	expergisci	experrectus sum	<i>wake up.</i>
Fatiscor	fatisci	fessus sum	<i>grow weary.</i>
Fruor	frui	fruitus sum	<i>enjoy.</i>
Fungor	fungi	functus sum	<i>discharge.</i>
Gradior	gradi	gressus sum	<i>step.</i>
Irascor	irasci	iratus sum	<i>be angry.</i>
Laabor	labi	lapsus sum	<i>glide.</i>
Loquor	loqui	locutus sum	<i>speak.</i>
Morior	mori	mortuus sum	<i>die.</i>
Nanciscor	nancisci	nactus sum	<i>obtain.</i>
Nascor	nasci	natus sum	<i>be born.</i>
Nitor	niti	{ nisus } sum	<i>strive.</i>
		{ nixus }	
Obliviscor	oblivisci	oblītus sum	<i>forget.</i>
Paciscor	pacisci	pactus sum	<i>bargain.</i>
Patior	pati	passus sum	<i>suffer.</i>
Proficiscor	proficisci	profectus sum	<i>set out.</i>
Queror	queri	questus sum	<i>complain.</i>
Sequor	sequi	secūtus sum	<i>follow.</i>
Ulciscor	ulcisci	ultus sum	<i>avenge.</i>
Utor	uti	usus sum	<i>use.</i>

Conjugation IV.

Assentior	assentīri	assensus sum	<i>agree to.</i>
Experior	experīri	expertus sum	<i>try.</i>
Metior	metīri	ensus sum	<i>measure.</i>
Opperior	opperīri	oppertus sum	<i>wait for.</i>
Ordior	ordīri	orsus sum	<i>begin.</i>
Orior	orīri	ortus sum	<i>rise.</i>

QUASI PASSIVES AND SEMI-DEPONENT.

I. ACTIVE FORM WITH PASSIVE MEANING.

Exulo	exulare	exulavi	exulatum	<i>be banished.</i>
Fio ¹	feri	factus sum		<i>be made.</i>
Liceo	licēre	licui	licitum	{ <i>be put up to auction.</i>
Vapulo ²	vapulare	vapulavi		
Veneo ³	venire	venii	venitum	<i>be on sale.</i>

II. ACTIVE PRESENT WITH PERFECT OF PASSIVE FORM.

Audeo	audēre	ausus sum	<i>dare.</i>
Fido	fidēre	fidus sum	<i>trust.</i>
Gaudeo	gaudēre	gavisus sum	<i>rejoice.</i>
Soleo	solēre	solitus sum	<i>be wont.</i>

III. ACTIVE PERFECT WITH DEPONENT PERFECT PARTICIPLE.

Ceno	cenavi	cenatus	<i>sup.</i>
Juro	juravi	juratus	<i>swear.</i>
Prandeo	prandi	pransus	<i>dine.</i>
Also	Nupta	wedded.	
	Potus	having drunk.	

¹ *Fio*, pass. of *facio*. ² *Vapulo*, pass. of *verbero*. ³ *Veneo*, pass. of *vendo*.

COMPOUNDS OF SUM.

Absum	abesse	{ abfui } { afui }	<i>be absent.</i>
Adsum	adesse	affui	— <i>present.</i>
Desum	deesse	defui	— <i>wanting.</i>
Insum	inesse	infui	— <i>in.</i>
Intersum	interesse	interfui	— <i>among.</i>
Obsum	obesse	obfui	— <i>in the way of.</i>
Præsum	præesse	præfui	— <i>before.</i>
Prosum	prodesse	profui	— <i>useful.</i>
Subsum	subesse	—	— <i>under.</i>
Supersum	superesse	superfui	— <i>over, remain.</i>

COMPOUNDS OF EO.

Abeo	abire	abīvi	abītum	<i>go away.</i>
Adeo	adire	adīvi	adītum	<i>go to.</i>
Anteo	anteire	anteivi	—	<i>go before.</i>
Circumeo	circumire	circumivi	circuitum	<i>go round.</i>
Coeo	coire	coivi	coitum	<i>go together.</i>
Exeo	exire	exivi	exitum	<i>go out.</i>
Ineo	inire	inivi	initum	<i>go into</i>
Intereo	interire	interi(v)i	interitum	<i>perish.</i>
Obeo	obire	obivi	obitum	<i>encounter.</i>
Pereo	perire	peri(v)i	peritum	<i>perish.</i>
Præeo	præire	præivi	præitum	<i>go before</i>
Prætereo	præterire	præterivi	præteritum	<i>go by.</i>
Prodeo	prodire	prodi(v)i	proditum	<i>go forth.</i>
Redeo	redire	redī(v)i	reditum	<i>return.</i>
Subeo	subire	subī(v)i	subitum	{ <i>go under,</i> <i>undergo.</i>
Trans eo	transire	transi(v)i	transitum	<i>go over.</i>

The Perfects of all these verbs have also the *v* left out; as, *obivi, obii*, etc., etc., which is, indeed, the more usual form. Where the *v* is bracketed the long form is not given.

VERBS SIMILAR IN SPELLING,*

THOUGH THEY HAVE TOTALLY DISTINCT MEANINGS.

Appello	appellare	appellavi	appellatum	<i>call.</i>
Appello	appellēre	appuli	appulsum	<i>land.</i>
Compello	compellare	compellavi	compellatum	<i>address.</i>
Compello	compellēre	compuli	compulsum	<i>compel.</i>
Colligo	colligāre	colligavi	colligatum	<i>bind.</i>
Colligo	colligēre	collegi	collectum	<i>collect.</i>
Dīco	dicare	dicavi	dicatum	<i>devote.</i>
Dīco	dicere	dixi	dictum	<i>say.</i>
Ēdo	edere	edīdi	editum	<i>give forth.</i>
Ēdo	ēdēre (esse)	ēdi	esum	<i>eat.</i>
Edūco	educāre	educavi	educatum	<i>educate.</i>
Edūco	edūcēre	eduxi	eductum	<i>lead out.</i>
Lēgō	legāre	legavi	legatum	<i>depute.</i>
Lēgō	legēre	lēgi	lectum	<i>gather.</i>
Occīdo	occīdēre	occīdi	occāsum	<i>fall.</i>
Occīdo	occīdēre	occīdi	occīsum	<i>slay.</i>
Sēro	serēre	serui	sertum	<i>join.</i>
Sēro	serēre	sēvi	sātum	<i>sow.</i>
Vōlo	volare	volavi	volatum	<i>fly.</i>
Vōlo	velle	volui	—	<i>wish.</i>

Est	3rd sing. pres. indic. of sum	<i>I am.</i>
Est	" " " " edo	<i>I eat.</i>
Nitēre	inf. pres. of niteo	<i>shine.</i>
Nitēre	2nd sing. imperat. pres. of nitor	<i>strive.</i>
Oblitus	part. pass. pf. of oblino	<i>smear.</i>
Oblitus	part. pf. of obliviscor	<i>forget.</i>
Pārēre	inf. pres. act. of pario	<i>bring forth.</i>
Pārēre	" " pareo	<i>obey.</i>
Vēnit }	{ 3rd. sing. pres. ind. of venio }	
Vēnit }	{ 3rd. sing. perf. ind. of " }	<i>come.</i>
Vēnit	3rd. sing. pres. ind. of veneo	<i>be sold.</i>

* Notice that the quantities differ in many cases.

CASES IN WHICH THE SAME VERB HAS DIFFERENT MEANINGS.

These will often be found to be reducible to one idea—thus,

LĒGO means (1) To *gather, select*.

“Illa legit calthas.”

(2) To *read*.

“Plurimus orbe legor.”

(3) To *coast along, skim*.

“Inarimen Prochytamque legit.”

These come under the one idea of “gathering:” (1) to gather literally; (2) to pick out the letters and words; (3) to skim lightly over or pass along. All these involve a notion of moving lightly along from one thing to another as one does in gathering flowers.

RŪO means (1) To *fall*.

“Ruit alto e culmine Troja.”—Virg. *Æn.* ii.

(2) To *rush*.

“Quoquo scelesti ruitis?”—Hor.

(3) To *throw up*.

“Et ruit atram

Ad cœlum picca crassus caligine nubem.”

These all fall under the idea of “violent motion.” “To be in violent motion” (intransitive); “to put in violent motion” (transitive). The motion may be in any direction—up or down.

VERBS WHICH HAVE NO PERFECT.

Antecello	<i>surpass.</i>	Furo	<i>rage.</i>
Ambigo	<i>waver.</i>	Glubo	<i>bark, peel.</i>
Frendo	<i>gnash.</i>	Labasco	<i>resound.</i>
	Plecto		<i>punish.</i>

VERBS THAT HAVE NO SUPINE.

Algeo	<i>be cold.</i>	Niteo	<i>shine.</i>
Angeo	<i>rex.</i>	Nolo	<i>be unwilling.</i>
Antecello	<i>surpass.</i>	Nuo	<i>nod.</i>
Audeo	<i>dare.</i>		
Compesco	<i>restrain.</i>	Pateo	<i>lie open.</i>
Conniveo	<i>wink.</i>	Paveo	<i>fear.</i>
Dego	<i>live.</i>	Plecto	<i>punish.</i>
Disco	<i>learn.</i>	Posco	<i>demand.</i>
		Possum	<i>be able.</i>
		Psallo	<i>play on harp.</i>
Ferveo, fervo	<i>boil.</i>	Sapio	<i>be wise.</i>
Fido	<i>trust.</i>	Scabo	<i>scratch.</i>
Fio	<i>become.</i>	Sileo	<i>be silent.</i>
Frigeo	<i>be cold.</i>	Soleo	<i>be wont.</i>
Fulgeo	<i>glitter.</i>	Sterto	<i>snore.</i>
Gaudeo	<i>rejoice.</i>	Strideo, strido	<i>creak.</i>
Incesso	<i>assail.</i>	Timeo	<i>fear.</i>
Lateo	<i>lie hid.</i>	Tremo	<i>tremble.</i>
Luceo	<i>shine.</i>	Tumeo	<i>swell.</i>
Lugeo	<i>mourn.</i>	Turgeo	<i>swell.</i>
Malo	<i>prefer.</i>	Vergo	<i>bend.</i>
Metuo	<i>fear.</i>	Vigeo	<i>flourish.</i>
Mico	<i>glitter.</i>	Vireo	<i>be green.</i>
		Volo	<i>wish.</i>

Also following Inceptives :—

conticesco
crebresco
delitesco
extimesco

horresco
languesco
maturesco
obmutesco

pallesco
tumesco
vanesco
vesperasco

With many others.

VERBS WHICH HAVE NEITHER PERFECT NOR SUPINE.

Ambigo	<i>waver.</i>	Furo	<i>rage.</i>
Antecello	<i>surpass.</i>	Plecto	<i>punish.</i>
Dignosco	<i>distinguish.</i>	Præcello	<i>excel.</i>

Also following Inceptives :—

hebesco	labasco	mitesco	puerasco
---------	---------	---------	----------

And many others.

VERBS WHICH HAVE TWO SUPINES.

Alo	alitur, altum	<i>feed.</i>
Applico	applicitur, applicatur	<i>join.</i>
Eneco	enectum, enecatur	<i>kill.</i>
Frendo	fressum, fresum	<i>gnash</i>
Frico	frictum, fricatur	<i>rub.</i>
Frigo	frictum, frixum	<i>parch.</i>
Lavo	lavatum, lautum, lotum	<i>wash.</i>
Misceo	mistum, mixtum	<i>mix.</i>
Pando	passum, pansum	<i>expand.</i>
Pango	panctum, pactum	<i>fix.</i>
Plico	*plicitum, plicatur	<i>fold.</i>
Poto	potatum, potum	<i>drink.</i>
Sancio	sanctum, sancitur	<i>consecrate.</i>
Tendo	tentum, tensum	<i>stretch.</i>
Tundo	tunsum, tusum	<i>thump.</i>

TWO OR MORE SUPINES FROM THE SAME VERB.

Alitum	}	Alo	<i>feed.</i>
Altum			
Applicium	}	Applico	<i>join</i>
Applicatum			
Enectum	}	Eneco	<i>kill.</i>
Enecatum			
Fressum	}	Frendo	<i>gnash.</i>
Fresum			
Frictum	}	Frico	<i>rub.</i>
Fricatum			
Frictum	}	Frigo	<i>parch.</i>
Frizum			
Lavatum	}	Lavo	<i>wash.</i>
Lautum			
Lotum			
Mistum	}	Misceo	<i>mix.</i>
Mixtum			
Passum	}	Pando	<i>expand.</i>
Pansum			
Panctum	}	Pango	<i>fix.</i>
Pactum			
*Plicium	}	Plico	<i>fold.</i>
Plicatum			
Potatum	}	Poto	<i>drink.</i>
Potum			
Sanctum	}	Sancio	<i>consecrate.</i>
Sancitum			
Tentum	}	Tendo	<i>stretch.</i>
Tensum			
Tunsum	}	Tundo	<i>thump.</i>
Tusum			

SUPINES SOMEWHAT SIMILAR THAT COME FROM
DIFFERENT VERBS.

captum	capio	<i>take.</i>
carptum	carpo	<i>pluck.</i>
casum	cado	<i>fall.</i>
cæsum	cædo	<i>cut.</i>
censum	censeo	<i>vote.</i>
sensum	sentio	<i>feel.</i>
scītum	scisco	<i>decree.</i>
scītum	scio	<i>know.</i>
sītum	sino	<i>allow.</i>
cītum	cio	<i>put in motion.</i>
cessum	cedo	<i>yield.</i>
sessum	sedeo	<i>sit.</i>
cretum	cerno	<i>sift.</i>
cretum	cresco	<i>grow.</i>
fixum	figo	<i>fix.</i>
fictum	fingo	<i>fashion.</i>
frictum	frico	<i>rub.</i>
frictum	frigo	<i>parch.</i>
genitum	gigno	<i>beget.</i>
gemitum	gemo	<i>groan.</i>
mansum	maneo	<i>remain.</i>
mansum	mando	<i>chew.</i>
messum	meto	<i>mow.</i>
missum	mitto	<i>send.</i>
mulsum	mulceo	<i>soothe.</i>
mulsum	mulgeo	<i>milk.</i>
parsum	parco	<i>spare.</i>
partum	pario	<i>bring forth.</i>

sessum	sedere	<i>sit.</i>
sensum	sentire	<i>feel.</i>
tensum(tum)	tendo	<i>stretch.</i>
tentum	teneo	<i>hold.</i>
textum	texo	<i>weave.</i>
tectum	tego	<i>cover.</i>
versum	verro	<i>sweep.</i>
versum	verto	<i>turn.</i>
visum	viso	<i>visit.</i>
visum	video	<i>see.</i>
vinctum	vincio	<i>bind.</i>
victum	vinco	<i>conquer.</i>
victum	vivo	<i>live.</i>
vectum	veho	<i>carry.</i>

PERFECTS SOMEWHAT SIMILAR THAT COME FROM
DIFFERENT VERBS.

cecīdi	}	cado	<i>fall.</i>
cecīdi	}	cædo	<i>cut.</i>
crevi	}	cerno	<i>sift.</i>
crevi	}	cresco	<i>grow.</i>
scivi	}	scisco	<i>seek to know, decrees.</i>
scivi	}	scio	<i>know.</i>
ēdi	}	ēdo	<i>eat.</i>
ēdīdi	}	ēdo	<i>publish.</i>
fixi	}	figo	<i>fix.</i>
finxi	}	fingo	<i>fashion.</i>
frixi	}	frigesco	<i>grow cold.</i>
frixi	}	frigo	<i>parch.</i>
fulsi	}	fulcio	<i>prop.</i>
fulsi	}	fulgeo	<i>glitter.</i>

luxi	}	luceo	<i>shine.</i>
luxi	}	lugeo	<i>mourn.</i>
mandi	}	mando	<i>chew.</i>
mansi	}	maneo	<i>remain.</i>
messui	}	meto	<i>reap.</i>
metui	}	metuo	<i>fear.</i>
mulsi	}	mulceo	<i>soothe.</i>
mulsi	}	mulgeo	<i>milk.</i>
nactus	}	nanciscor	<i>obtain.</i>
natus	}	nascor	<i>be born.</i>
orsus	}	ordior	<i>begin.</i>
ausus	}	audeo	<i>dare.</i>
ortus	}	orior	<i>rise.</i>
pavi	}	pasco	<i>feed.</i>
pavi	}	paveo	<i>fear.</i>
peperci	}	parco	<i>spare.</i>
peperi	}	pario	<i>bring forth.</i>
pependi	}	pendeo	<i>hang.</i>
pependi	}	pendo	<i>cause to hang, weigh.</i>
pinxi	}	pingo	<i>paint.</i>
pinsi (pinsui)	}	pinso	<i>pound.</i>
quivi	}	queo	<i>be able.</i>
quievi	}	quiesco	<i>rest.</i>
scivi	}	scio	<i>know</i>
civi	}	cieo	<i>put in motion.</i>
vici	}	vinco	<i>conquer</i>
vinxi	}	vincio	<i>bind</i>
vixi	}	vivo	<i>live</i>

PRINCIPAL INCEPTIVE VERBS.

These, which are also called Inchoative Verbs, express the beginning of action, and are of the 3rd Conjugation.

(a) THOSE WITH PERFECT AND SUPINE.

Abolesco	-ere	abolevi	abolitum	<i>pass away.</i>
Adolesco	-ere	adolevi	adultum	<i>grow up.</i>
Coalesco	-ere	coalui	coalitum	<i>grow together.</i>
Concupisco	-ere	concupivi	concupitum	<i>desire.</i>
Consuesco	-ere	consuevi	consuetum	<i>get accustomed.</i>
Convalesco	-ere	convalui	convalitum	<i>get well.</i>
Exardesco	-ere	exarsi	exarsum	<i>blaze forth.</i>
Inveterasco	-ere	inveteravi	inveteratum	<i>become old.</i>
Obdormisco	-ere	obdormivi	obdormitum	<i>fall asleep.</i>
Scisco	-ere	scivi	scitum	<i>decree.</i>
Mansuesco	-ere	mansuevi	mansuetum	<i>grow tame.</i>
Revivisco	-ere	revixi	revictum	<i>come to life again.</i>

(β) THOSE WITH PERFECT ONLY :—

Consensco	ere	consenui	<i>grow old.</i>
Conticesco	-ere	conticui	<i>become silent.</i>
Delitesco	-ere	delitui	<i>lie hid.</i>
Duresco	-ere	durui	<i>grow hard.</i>
Effloresco	-ere	efflorui	<i>bloom.</i>
Expavesco	-ere	expavi	<i>grow alarmed.</i>
Horresco	-ere	horruī	<i>shudder.</i>
Incalesco	-ere	incalui	<i>get warm.</i>
Incandesco	-ere	incandui	<i>glow.</i>
Incanesco	-ere	incanui	<i>become white.</i>
Increbresco	-ere	increbrui	<i>become frequent.</i>
Ingemisco	-ere	ingemui	<i>groan over.</i>
Illucesco	-ere	illuxi	<i>grow light.</i>
Languesco	-ere	langui	<i>grow languid.</i>
Maturesco	-ere	maturui	<i>grow ripe.</i>

Obmutesco	-ere	obmutui	<i>become mute.</i>
Obstupesco	-ere	obstupui	<i>become amazed.</i>
Pallesco	-ere	pallui	<i>grow pale.</i>
Patesco	-ere	patui	<i>become open.</i>
Rubesco	-ere	rubui	<i>become red.</i>
Tepesco	-ere	tepuī	<i>become warm.</i>
Viresco	-ere	virui	<i>become green.</i>

(γ) WITHOUT PERFECT OR SUPINE.

Hebesco	-ere	<i>grow blunt.</i>	Labasco	<i>begin to totter.</i>
Ingravesco	-ere	<i>grow heavy.</i>	Mitesco	<i>grow ripe.</i>
		Puerasco	<i>become a boy</i>	

PRINCIPAL FREQUENTATIVE VERBS.

These signify repeated or intenser action, and are of the 1st Conjugation. Such are :—

Canto	<i>sing.</i>	Hæsito	<i>stick fast.</i>
Capto	<i>catch up.</i>	Lectito	<i>gather often.</i>
†Curso	<i>run hither and thither</i>	Merso	<i>dip in.</i>
Cursito	<i>run hither and thither</i>	Minitor	<i>threaten.</i>
Clamito	<i>cry aloud.</i>	Pulso	<i>strike.</i>
Dicto	<i>say often.</i>	†Rogito	<i>ask often.</i>
Dictito	<i>say often.</i>	Salto	<i>dance.</i>
Gesto	<i>bear.</i>	†Ventito	<i>come often.</i>

These are all conjugated regularly, -are, -avi, -atum, except those marked †, which have no perfect or supine.

Minitor, -ari, -atus sum, deponent.

DESIDERATIVE VERBS.

These signify “desire to do a thing,” and are of the 4th Conjugation.

Esurio, esurire, — esurītum	<i>wish to eat.</i>
Parturio, parturire, parturivi & -ii, —	<i>am in labour,</i> <i>wish to produce.</i>

PRINCIPAL IMPERSONAL VERBS.

These are mostly of the 2nd Conjugation, and are conjugated as such only in 3rd Person Singular of Finite Verb and in the Infinitive.

CONJUGATION 1.—INFINITIVES REGULAR IN *āre*.

Constat	constitit	<i>it is acknowledged.</i>
Delectat		<i>it delights.</i>
Juvat	juvit	<i>it pleases.</i>

CONJUGATION 2.—INFINITIVES REGULAR IN *ēre*.

Attinet	attinuit	<i>it relates..</i>
Dedecet	dedecuit	<i>it misbecomes.</i>
Decet	decuit	<i>it becomes.</i>
Libet	libuit & libitum est	<i>it pleases.</i>
Licet	licuit & licitum est	<i>it is lawful.</i>
Liquet	liquit & licuit	<i>it is clear.</i>
Miseret	miseruit & miseritum est	<i>it pities.</i>
Oportet	oportuit	<i>it behoves.</i>
Pertinet	pertinuit	<i>it belongs.</i>
Piget	piguit & pigitum est	<i>it irks.</i>
Pœnitet	pœnituit	<i>it repents.</i>
Pudet	puduit & puditum est	<i>it shames.</i>
Tædet	tæduit & pertæsum est	<i>it disgusts.</i>

CONJUGATION 3.—INFINITIVES REGULAR IN *ĕre*.

Accidit	accidit	<i>it happens.</i>
Contingit	contigit	<i>it befalls</i>

CONJUGATION 4.—INFINITIVES REGULAR IN *īre*.

Convēnit	convēnit	<i>it suits.</i>
Evēnit	evēnit	<i>it turns out.</i>

Interest	interfuit	interesse	<i>it imports.</i>
Rēfert	rētulit	rēferre	<i>it concerns.</i>

IMPERSONALS RELATING TO THE WEATHER, ETC.

Advesperascit	advesperascere	-avit	<i>it approaches evening.</i>
Fulgurat	fulgurare		<i>it lightens.</i>
Illucescit	illucescere	illuxit	<i>it grows light.</i>
Lucescit	lucescere		<i>it dawns.</i>
Ningit	ningere	ninxit	<i>it snows.</i>
Pluit	pluere	pluit (pluvit)	<i>it rains.</i>
Tonat	tonare	tonuit	<i>it thunders.</i>
Vesperascit	vesperascere	vesperavit	<i>it becomes evening.</i>

SPECIMEN OF AN IMPERSONAL VERB IN FULL.

	<i>Indic. Mood.</i>	<i>Conj. Mood.</i>	<i>Inf. Mood.</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	Oportet	oporteat	oportere.
<i>Fut.</i>	Oportebit		
<i>Imperfect.</i>	Oportebat	porteret	
<i>Perfect.</i>	Oportuit	oportuerit	oportuisse.
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	Oportuerit		
<i>P. Perf.</i>	Oportuerat	oportuisset.	

ANOMALOUS VERBS,

I.e., Verbs which do not form their parts according to Rule.

Eo	ire	ivi (ii), itum	<i>go.</i>
Fero	ferre	tuli, latum	<i>bear.</i>
Fio	fieri	factus sum	<i>am made.</i>
Malo	malle	malui	<i>had rather.</i>
Nolo	nolle	nolui	<i>am unwilling.</i>
Possum	posse	potui	<i>am able.</i>
Queo	quire	quivi	<i>am able.</i>
Volo	velle	volui	<i>wish.</i>

THE IRREGULARITIES IN **ĒDO** (*to Eat*) ARE :—

Indicative Present.

<i>Act.</i>	Edis or es	edit or est	editis or estis.
<i>Pass.</i>	3 sing.	Editur or estur.	

Imperative Present.

<i>Act.</i>	Ede or es,	edite or este.
-------------	------------	----------------

Imperative Future.

<i>Act.</i>	Edito or esto, editote or estote.
-------------	-----------------------------------

Conjunctive Present.

<i>Act.</i>	Edam or edim.
-------------	---------------

Conjunctive Imperfect.

<i>Act.</i>	Ederem or essem.
<i>Pass.</i>	Ederetur or essetur.

Infinitive.

	Edere or esse.
--	----------------

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

INQUAM, *I Say.*

<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	Inquam	inquis	inquit.
	inquimus		inquiunt.
<i>Fut. Simple.</i>		inquies	inquiet.
<i>Imperf.</i>			inquietabat.
			inquietabant.
<i>Perf.</i>		inquisti	inquit.
<i>Imperative Pres.</i>		inque, inquite.	
<i>Imperative Fut.</i>		inquito.	

AIO, *I Say.*

<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	Aio	ais	ait, aiunt.
<i>Ind. Imp.</i>	Aiebam, etc.,	regular, sing. and plural.	
<i>Conj. Pres.</i>		aias	aiat, aiant.

DEFECTIVE VERBS (*continued*).

The following have no present stem, and therefore no tenses derived from that stem.

Cœpi, *I have begun or began.*

Odi, *I hate.*

Memini, *I remember.*

Indicative Mood.

<i>Perf.</i>	{ Cœp- Od- Memin-	{ i, isti, it, imus, istis, erunt.
<i>Pluperf.</i>	{ Cœp- Od- Memin-	{ eram, eras, erat, eramus, eratis, erant.
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	{ Cœp- Od- Memin-	{ ero, eris, erit, erimus, eritis, erint.

Conjunctive Mood.

<i>Perf.</i>	{ Cœp- Od- Memin-	{ erim, eris, erit, erimus, eritis, erint.
<i>Pluperf.</i>	{ Cœp- Od- Memin-	{ issem, isses, isset, issemus, issetis, issent.

Imperative Mood. memento, mementote.

Verb Infinitive.

<i>Infinitive. Perf.</i>	Cœpisse	odisse	meminisse.
<i>Part. Perf. Pass.</i>	Cœptus	osus.	
<i>Part. Fut. Act.</i>	Cœpturus	osurus.	

<i>N.B. Perf.</i>	Memini	<i>I remember.</i>	Odi	<i>I hate.</i>
<i>P.P.</i>	Memineram	{ <i>I was remembering,</i> <i>remembered.</i>	Oderam	{ <i>I was hating,</i> <i>hated.</i>
<i>F.P.</i>	Meminero	<i>I shall remember.</i>	Odero	<i>I shall hate.</i>

FARI, *to Speak.*

The forms in brackets only found in compounds,
e.g. affari, effari, pröfari, præfari.

<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	Fatur, (famur), (famini).
<i>Fut.</i>	Fabor, (faberi), fabitur, (fabimur).
<i>Imperf.</i>	(Fabar).
<i>Perf.</i>	Fatus sum, etc.
<i>Pluperf.</i>	Fatus eram, etc.
<i>Conj. Imperf.</i>	(Farer).
<i>Perf.</i>	Fatus sim, etc.
<i>Pluperf.</i>	Fatus, essem, etc.
<i>Imperative Present.</i>	Fare.
<i>Infinitive.</i>	Fari. <i>Ger.</i> Fandi, fando. <i>Supine.</i> Fatu.
<i>Part. Pres.</i>	Fantem, fantis, etc. <i>Part. Perf.</i> Fatus, a, um.
<i>Gerundive.</i>	Fandus.

AGE, AVE, ETC.

Age, agite, *come.*

Apage, *begone.*

Ave (sometimes spelt *have*), avete, aveto, avēre (*Infin.*) *hail!*

Salve, salvete, salveto, salvebis (*fut.*), salvēre (*Infin.*), *hail!*

Cēdo, cedite or cete, *give here.*

Quæso, *pl.* quæsumus, *entreat.*

Vale, valete, valetto, valebis (*fut.*), valēre (*Infin.*), *farewell.*

Infit, *he begins.* (*Only in this form.*)

IRREGULAR VERBS,

ALPHABETICALLY ARRANGED.

NOTE.—Those marked with an asterisk are only used in compounds.

- Abolesco, -levi, abolitum, 3. *to pass away.*
 Accendo, -di, -sum, 3. *to set on fire.*
 Acuo, acui, acūtum, 3. *to sharpen.*
 Adolesco, -levi, adultum, 3. *to grow up.*
 Agnosco, -novi, -nītum, 3. *to recognise.*
 Ago, egi, actum, 3. *to do.*
 Aio, ais, ait, *I say, defect.*
 Algeo, alsi, 2. *to be cold.*
 Allicio, allexi, allectum, 3. *to allure.*
 Alo, alui, alītum or altum, 3. *to nourish.*
 Ambigo, 3. *to waver.*
- Amicio, amicui, amictum, 4. *to clothe.*
 Ango, anxi, 3. *to squeeze.*
 Antecello, 3. *to surpass.*
 Aperio, aperui, apertum, 4. *to open.*
 Appello, appuli, appulsum, 3. *to land.*
 Applico, applicui applicavi, applicītum applicatum, 1. *to apply.*
 Arcesso, -ivi, -itum, 3. *to send for.*
 Ardeo, arsi, arsum, 2. *to take fire.*
 Arguo, argui, argūtum, 3. *to prove.*
 Audeo, ausus sum, 2. *to dare.*
 Augeo, auxi, auctum, 2. *to increase.*
- Bibo, bibi, bibitum, 3. *to drink.*
- Cado, cecīdi, cāsum, 3. *to fall.*
 Cædo, cecīdi, cæsum, 3. *to cut, beat, kill.*
 Caleo, calui, 2. *to be warm.*
 *Cando, *cendi, *censum, 3. *to set on fire.*
 Cano, cecīni, cantum, 3. *to sing.*
 Capesso, -sivi, -situm, 3. *to seize.*
- Capio, cepi, captum, 3. *to take.*
 Carpo, carpsi, carptum, 3. *to pluck.*
 Caveo, cavi, cautum, 2. *to beware.*
- Cedo, cessi, cessum, 3. *to yield.*
- Censeo, censui, censum, 2. *to vote.*
 Cerno, crevi, cretum, 3. *to sift.*
 Cieo, civi, cītum, 2. *to stir up.*
 Cingo, cinxi, cinctum, 3. *to surround.*
 Clango, 3. *to resound.*
 Claudio, clausi, clausum, 3. *to shut.*
 Coalesco, coalui, coalitum, 3. *to grow together.*
 Cognosco, -novi, -nītum, 3. *know.*
 Cogo, coēgi, coactum, 3. *to compel.*
 Colligo, collegi, collectum, 3. *to collect.*
- Colo, colui, cultum, 3. *to till.*
 Como, compsi, comptum, 3. *to adorn.*
 Compello, -puli, -pulsum, 3. *to compel.*
 Comperio, -pēri, -pertum, 4. *ascertain.*
 Compesco, compescui, 3. *to restrain.*
 Concupisco, -ivi, -itum, 3. *to desire.*
 Conniveo, -nivi and -nixi, 2. *to wink.*
 Consenesco, consenui, 3. *to grow old.*
 Consuesco, consuevi, consuetum, 3. *to get accustomed.*
 Consūlo, -sūlui, -sultum, 3. *to consult.*
- Conticesco, conticui, 3. *to become silent.*
 Convalesco, -valui, -valitum, 3. *to get well.*
 Coquo, coxi, coctum, 3. *to cook.*

Crepo, crepui, crepitum, 1. *to creak*.
Cresco, crevi, crētum, 3. *to grow*.
*Cūbo, *cubui, *cubūtum, 1. *to lie down*.
Cūdo, cudi, cūsum, 3. *to fashion*.
Cumbo, cubui, cubūtum, 3. *to lie down*.
Cupio, cupivi, cupitum, 3. *to desire*.
Curro, cūcurri, cursum, 3. *to run*.

Defendo, defendi, defensum, 3. *to defend.*
Dēgo, 3. *to live.*
Deleo, dēlēvi, deletum, 2. *to blot out.*
Delitescō, delitui, 3. *to lie hid.*
Demo, dempsi, demptum, 3. *to take away.*
Depso, -sui, -stum, 3. *to knead.*
Dico, dixi, dictum, 3. *to say.*
Dignosco, 3. *to distinguish.*
Diligo, dilexi, dilectum, 3. *to love.*
Dimico, -avi and -ui, -atum, 1. *to fight.*
Disco, didici, 3. *to learn.*
Divido, divisi, divisum, 3. *to divide.*
Do, dēdi, dātum, 1. *to give.*

Abdo, abdidi, abditum, 3.	to <i>hide</i> .
Addo	to <i>add</i> .
Condo	to <i>found, hide</i> .
Credo	to <i>believe</i> .
Dedo	to <i>give up</i> .
Edo	to <i>give forth</i> .
Perdo	to <i>lose</i> .
Prodo	to <i>betray</i> .
Reddo	to <i>restore</i> .
Subdo	to <i>substitute</i> .
Trado	to <i>deliver</i> .
Vendo	to <i>sell</i> .

Doceo, docui, doctum, 2. *to teach.*
Doleo, dolui, dolitum, 2. *to feel pain.*
Dŏmo, dŏmui, dŏmĭtum, 1. *to tame.*
Duco, duxi, ductum, 3. *to lead.*
Duresco, durui, 3. *to grow hard.*

Edo, ēdi, ēsum, 3. *to eat*.
Effloresco, efflorui, 3. *to bloom*.
Elicio, elicui, elicitedum, 3. *to entice forth*.

Emo, emi, emptum, 3. *to buy, take.*
Eneco, -cui & -avi, -ctum & -ātum, 1. *kill.*

Eo, -ivi, -itum, *to go*.
 Abeo, -ivi and -ii, -itum, *to go away*.
 Adeo, -ivi and -ii, -itum, *to go to*.
 Ante-eo, ante-ivi, *to go before*.
 Circu(m)eo, -ivi, -itum, *to go round*.
 Coeo, coivi, coitum, *to go together*.
 Exeo, exivi, exitum, *to go out*.
 Ineo, inivi, initum, *to go into*.
 Intereo, -i(v)i, -itum, *to perish*.

Obeo, obivi, obitum, *to encounter*.
Pereo, peri(v)i, peritum, *to perish*.
Præeo, -ivi, -itum, *to go before*.
Prætereo, -ivi, -itum, *to go by*.
Prodeo, -i(v)i, -itum, *to go forth*.
Redeo, redi(v)i, reditum, *to return*.
Subeo, subi(v)i, subitum { *to go under*
undergo.
Transeō, -i(v)i, -itum, *to go over*.

Exardesco, -arsi, -arsum, 3. *to blaze forth.*
 Excello, excellui, 3. *to excel.*
 Expavescō, expavi, 3. *to grow alarmed.*

Făcesso, -si, -situm, 3. *to accomplish.*
 Facio, feci, factum, 3. *to do, make.*
 Fallo, fēfelli, falsum, 3. *to deceive.*
 Farcio, farsi, fartum, 4. *to stuff.*
 Faveo, favi, fautum, 2. *to favour.*
 *Fendo, *fendi, *fensum, 3. *to strike.*
 Fero, inf. ferre, tūli, latum, *to bear.*
 Fervec and -vo, -bui and -vi, 2, 3. *to boil.*
 Fido, sisus sum, 3. *to trust.*
 Figo, fixi, fixum, 3. *to fix.*

Findo, fidi, fissum, 3. *to cleave.*
Fingo, finxi, fictum, 3. *to fashion.*
Fio, inf. fieri, factus sum, *to become.*
Flecto, flexi, flexum, 3. *to bend.*
Fleo, flevi, fletum, 2. *to weep.*
Floreo, florui, 2. *to flourish.*
Fluo, fluxi, fluxum, 3. *to flow.*

Fodio, fōdi, fossum, 3. *to dig.*

Foveo, fovi, fotum, 2. *to cherish.*

Frango, fregi, fractum, 3. *to break.*

Fremo, -ui, -itum, 3. *to murmur.*

Frendo, fressum & frēsum, 3. *to gnash.*

Frico, frīcui, frictum & -atum, 1. *to rub.*

Frigeo, 2. *to be cold.*

Frigo, -xi, -ctum or -xum, 3. *to parch.*

Fugio, fugi, fugitum, 3. *to flee.*

Fulcio, fulsi, fultum, 4. *to prop.*

Fulgeo, fulsi, 2. *to glitter.*

Fundo, fūdi, fusum, 3. *to pour, rout.*

Furo, furui, 3. *to rage.*

Gaudeo, gavīsus sum, 2. *to rejoice.*

Gemo, gemui, gēmītum, 3. *to groan.*

Gero, gessi, gestum, 3. *to carry on.*

Gigno, genui, genitum, 3. *to produce.*

Glubo, 3. *to bark, peel.*

Hæreo, hæsi, hæsum, 2. *to stick.*

Haurio, hausi, haustum, 4. *to drain.*

Horresco, horrui, 3. *to shudder.*

Ico, ici, ictum, 3. *to strike.*

Ignosco, ignōvi, ignōtum, 3. *to pardon.*

Illucesco, illuxi, 3. *to grow light.*

Imbuo, imbui, imbutum, 3. *to tinge.*

Incalesco, incalui, 3. *to get warm.*

Incandesco, incandui, 3. *to glow.*

Incanesco, incanui, 3. *to become white.*

Incendo, -cendi, -censum, 3. *to set on fire.*

Incesso, -cessivi, or -cessi, 3. *to assail.*

Incipio, incepi, inceptum, 3. *to begin.*

Increbresco, -crebui, 3. *to become frequent.*

Indulgeo, -ulsi, -ultum, 2. *to be indulgent.*

Induo, indui, indutum, 3. *to put on.*

Ingemisco, ingemui, 3. *to groan over.*

Jacio, jēci, jactum, 3. *to throw.*

Jubeo, jussi, jussum, 2. *to command.*

Jungo, junxi, junctum, 3. *to join.*

Juvo, juvi, jutum, 1. *to help.*

Labasco, 3. *to totter.*

Lacesso, -ivi, -itum, 3. *to provoke.*

Lædo, læsi, læsum, *to hurt.*

Lambo, lambi, 3. *to lick.*

Languesco, languui, 3. *to grow languid.*

Lateo, latui, 2. *to lie hid.*

Lavo, lavi, lavātum, lautum, lotum, 1. *to wash.*

Lego, legi, lectum, 3. *to choose, read.*

Lino, levi and livi, litum, 3. *to smear.*

Lingo, linxi, linctum, 3. *to lick.*

Linquo, liqui, * lictum, 3. *to leave.*

Luceo, luxi, 2. *to shine.*

Ludo, lusi, lusum, 3. *to play.*

Lugeo, luxi, 2. *to mourn.*

Luo, lui, luītum, 3. *to wash, atone.*

Malo, inf. malle, malui, *to prefer.*

Mando, mandi, mansum, 3. *to chew.*

Maneo, mansi, mansum, 2. *to remain.*

Mansuesco, -suevi, -suetum, 3. *grow tame.*

Maturesco, maturui, 3. *to grow ripe.*

Mergo, mersi, mersum, 3. *to drown.*

Meto, messui, messum, 3. *to mow, reap.*

Metuo, metui, 2. *to fear.*

Mico, micui, 1. *to glitter.*

Minuo, minui, minutum, 3. *to lessen.*

Misceo, -cui, mistum or mixtum, 2. *mix.*

Mitesco, 3. *to grow ripe.*

Mitto, misi, missum, 3. *to send.*

Mōlo, molui, molitum, 3. *to grind.*

Mordeo, mōmordi, morsum, 2. *to bite.*

Moveo, movi, mōtum, 2. *to move.*

Mulceo, mulsi, mulsum, 2. *to soothe.*

Mulgeo, mulsi, mulsum, 2. *to milk.*

Necto, -xui and -xi, -xum, 3. *to tie, bin¹.*

Negligo, -lexi, -lectum, 3. *to neglect.*

Neo, nevi, nētum, 2. *to spin.*

Ningo, ninxi, 3. *to snow.*

No, navi, 1. *to swim.*

Nolo, inf. nolle, nolui, *to be unwilling.*

Nosco, novi, notum, 3. *to be acquainted with.*

Nubo, nupsi, nuptum, 3. *to be married.*

Obmutesco, obmutui, 3. *to become mute.*

Obdormisco, -ivi, -itum, 3. *to fall asleep.*

Obstupesco, -stupui, 3. *to become amazed.*

Occido, occidi, occisum, 3. *to fall.*

Occido, occidi, occisum, 3. *to slay.*

Oculo, ocului, occultum, 3. *to hide.*

Offendo, -di, -sum, 3. *to knock against.*

Operio, operui, opertum, 4. *to cover.*

Pallesco, pallui, 3. *grow pale.*

Pando, -di, -sum & passum, 3. *to spread.*

Pango, pepigi, pactum, 3. *to fasten.*

Parco, peperci, parsum, 3. *to spare.*

Pario, peperui, partum, 3. *to bring forth.*

Pasco, pavi, pastum, 3. *to feed.*

Patesco, patui, 3. *to become open.*

Paveo, pavi, 2. *to fear.*

Pecto, -xi, -xum and -ctum, 3. *to comb.*

Pello, pepuli, pulsum, 3. *to drive.*

Pendeo, pēpendi, pensum, 2. *to hang.*

Pendo, pēpendi, pensum, 3. *to weigh.*

Percello, -cūli, -culsum, 3. *to dishearten.*

Pergo, perrexui, perrectum, 3. *to go on.*

Peto, petivi, petitum, 3. *to ask, seek.*

Pingo, pinxi, pictum, 3. *to paint.*

Pinso, -si and -sui, -sum, 3. *to pound.*

Plango, planxi, planctum, 3. *to beat.*

Plaudo, -si, -sum, 3. *to clap hands.*

Plecto, 3. *to punish.*

*Pleo, *plevi, *pletum, 2. *to fill.*

Plico, plicavi and *plicui, *plicatum and plicitum, 1. *to fold.*

Pono, posui, positum, 3. *to place.*

Posco, poposci, 3. *to demand.*

Possum, inf. posse, potui, *to be able.*

Poto, -avi, -atum and pōtum, 1. *to drink.*

Præcello, præcellui, 3. *to excel.*

Prandeo, prandi, pransum, 2. *to dine.*

Prehendo, -di, -sum, 3. *to grasp.*

Premo, pressi, pressum, 3. *to press.*

Promo, -mpsi, -mptum, 3. *to take forth.*

Psallo, psalli, 3. *to play on harp.*

Pungo, pupugi, punctum, 3. *to prick.*

Quæro, quæsi, quæsitum, 3. *to seek.*

Quatio, quassi, quassum, 3. *to shake.*

Queo, quivi, quictum, *to be able.*

Quiesco, quievi, quietum, 3. *to rest.*

Rāpio, rapui, raptum, 3. *to seize.*

Rado, rasi, rasum, 3. *to scrape.*

Rego, rexi, rectum, 3. *to rule.*

Reperio, -pperi, -pertum, 4. *to discover.*

Rēpo, repsi, reptum, 3. *to creep.*

Revivisco, revixi, 3. *to come to life again.*

Rideo, risi, risum, 2. *to laugh.*

Rodo, rosi, rosum, 3. *to gnaw.*

Rubesco, rubui, 3. *to become red.*

Rudo, -di and -ivi, -itum, 3. *to bray.*

Rumpo, rupi, ruptum, 3. *to break.*

Ruo, rui, rutum, 3. *to rush, fall.*

Sæpio (sepio), -si, -tum, 4. *to hedge in.*

Salio, salui, saltum, 4. *to leap.*

Sancio, sanxi, sanctum, 4. *to consecrate.*

Sapio, sapi(v)i, 3. *to taste of, be wise.*

Sarcio, sarsi, sartum, 4. *to mend.*

Scabo, scabi, 3. *to scratch.*

Scalpo, scalpsi, scalptum, 3. *to scratch.*

Scando, scandi, scansum, 3. *to climb.*

Scindo, scīdi, scissum, 3. *to tear.*

Scisco, scivi, scitum, 3. *to decree.*

Scribo, scripsi, scriptum, 3. *to write.*

Sculpo, sculpsi, sculptum, 3. *to engrave.*

Seco, secui, sectum, 1. *to cut.*

Sedeo, sēdi, sessum, 2. *to sit.*

Sentio, sensi, sensum, 4. *to feel.*

Sepelio, sepelivi, sepultum, 3. *to bury.*

Sero, serui, sertum, 3. *to join.*

Sero, sevi, sätum, 3. *to sow.*

Serpo, serpsi, serptum, 3. *to crawl.*

Sido, sidi, 3. *to sit down.*

Sileo, silui, 2. *to be silent.*

Singultio, 4. *to sob.*

Sino, sivi, sätum, 3. *to allow.*

*Sisto, *stiti, *statum, 3. *to make to stand.*

Sitio, siti(v)i, 4. *to be thirsty.*

Soleo, solitus sum, 2. *to be wont.*

Solvo, solvi, solütum, 3. *to loosen.*

Sono, sonni, sonitum, 1. *to sound.*

Sorbeo, -bui, 2. *to suck up.*

Spargo, sparsi, sparsum, 3. *to sprinkle.*

*Specio, *spexi, *spectrum, 3. *to espy.*

Sperno, spreui, spretum, 3. *to despise.*

Spondeo, sponendi, sponsum, 2. *to pledge.*

Statuo, statui, statütum, 3. *to set up.*

Sterno, stravi, stratum, 3. *to strew.*

Sterto, stertui, 3. *to snore.*

*Stingo, *stinxi, *stinctum, 2. *to quench.*

Sto, stēti, statum, 1. *to stand.*

Strepo, strepui, strepitum, 3. *to roar.*

Strideo, stridi, 2. *to shriek.*

Stringo, strinxi, strictum, 3. *to tie.*

Struo, struxi, structum, 3. *to pile.*

Suadeo, suasi, suasum, 2. *to advise.*

Suesco, suevi, suetum, 3. *to be wont.*

Sugo, suxi, suctum, 3. *to suck.*

Sum, inf. esse, perf. fui, *to be.*

Absum, -esse, -fui & afui, *be absent.*

Adsum, -esse, -affui, *to be present.*

Desum, -esse, -fui, *to be wanting.*

Insum, -esse, -fui, *to be in.*

Intersum, -esse, -fui, *to be among.*

Obsum, -esse, -fui, *to be in the way of.*

Præsum, -esse, -fui, *to be before.*

Prosum, prodesse, profui, *to be useful.*

Subsum, subesse, *to be under.*

Supersum, -esse, -fui, *to be over, remain.*

Sumo, sumpsi, sumptum, 3. *to take.*

Suo, süi, sutum, 3. *to sew.*

Surgo, surrexi, surrectum, 3. *to arise.*

Tango, tetigi, tactum, 3. *to touch.*

Tego, texi, tectum, 3. *to cover.*

Temno, tempsi, temptum, 3. *to despise.*

Tendo, tetendi, -sum & -tum, 3. *to stretch.*

Teneo, tenui, tentum, 2. *to hold.*

Tepesco, tepui, 3. *to become warm.*

Tero, trivi, tritum, 3. *to rub.*

Tergo, tersi, tersum, 3. *to wipe.*

Texo, texui, textum, 3. *to weave.*

Timeo, timui, 2. *to fear.*

Tingo, tinxi, tinctum, 3. *to dye.*

Tollo, sustuli, sublatus, 3. *to take up.*

Tondeo, totondi, tonsum, 2. *to shear.*

Tono, tonui, tonitum, 1. *to thunder.*

Torqueo, torsi, tortum, 2. *to twist.*

Torreo, torrui, tostum, 2. *to roast.*

Traho, traxi, tractum, 3. *to draw.*

Tremo, tremui, 3. *to tremble.*

Tribuo, tribui, tributum, 3. *to assign.*

Trudo, trusi, trusum, 3. *to thrust.*

Tundo, tutudi, tunsum, 3. *to thump.*

Turgeo, tursi, 2. *to swell.*

Unguo, unxi, unctum, 3. *to anoint.*

Urgeo, ursi, 2. *to press.*

Uro, ussi, ustum, 3. *to burn.*

Vado, *vasi, *vasum, 3. *to go.*

Veho, vexi, vectum, 3. *to carry.*

Vello, vulsi (velli), vulsum, 3. *to pluck.*

Veneo, venivi and venii, venitum, 4. *to be on sale.*

Venio, veni, ventum, 4. *to come.*

Vergo, versi, 3. *to bend.*

Verro, verri, versum, 3. *to sweep.*

Verto, verti, versum, 3. *to turn.*

Veto, vetui, vetitum, 1. *to forbid.*

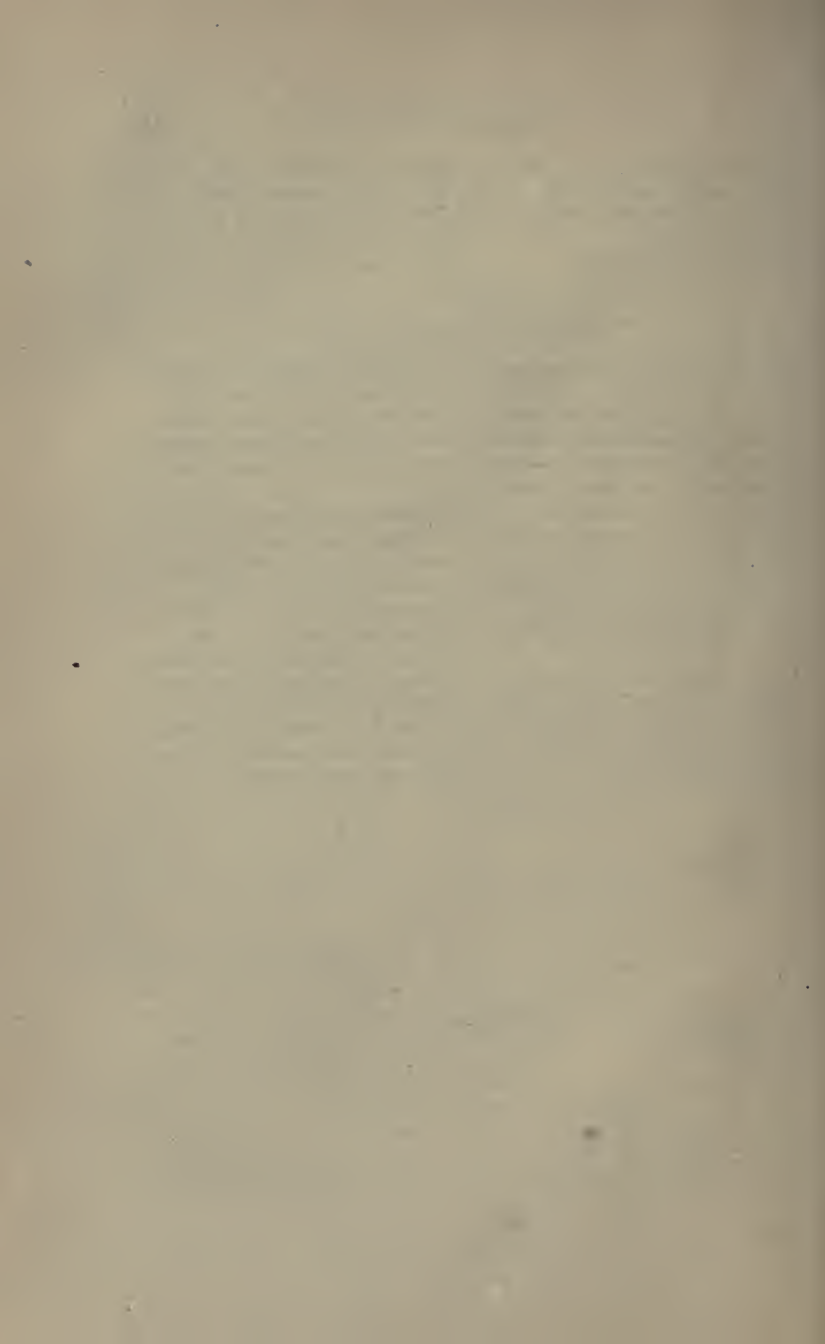
Video, vidi, visum, 2. *to see*.
 Vincio, vinxi, vinctum, 4. *to bind*.
 Vinco, vici, victum, 3. *to conquer*.
 Viso, visi, 3. *to visit*.
 Vivo, vixi, victum, 3. *to live*.

Volo, inf. velle, volui, *to wish*.
 Volvo, volvi, volūtum, 3. *to roll*.
 Vomo, vomui, vomitum, 3. *to vomit*.
 Voveo, vovi, votum, 2. *to vow*.

IRREGULAR DEPONENTS.

Amplector, amplecti, amplexus sum, *to embrace*.
 Apiscor, apisci, aptus sum, *to obtain*.
 Assentior, -tiri, assensus sum, *to agree to*.
 Comminiscor, -ci, -mentus sum, *to devise*.
 Expergiscor, -ci, experrectus sum, *to wake up*.
 Experior, experiri, expertus sum, *to try*.
 Fateor, fateri, fassus sum, *to confess*.
 Fatiscor, -ci, fessus sum, *to grow weary*.
 Fruor, frui, fruitus sum, *to enjoy*.
 Fungor, -gi, functus sum, *to discharge*.
 Grador, gradi, gressus sum, *to step*.
 Irascor, irasci, iratus sum, *to be angry*.
 Labor, labi, lapsus sum, *to glide*.
 Loquor, loqui, locutus sum, *to speak*.
 Medeor, mederi, *to heal*.

Metior, metiri, mensus sum, *to measure*.
 Morior, mori, mortuus sum, *to die*.
 Nanciscor, -ci, nactus sum, *to obtain*.
 Nascor, nasci, natus sum, *to be born*.
 Nitor, niti, nisus & nixus sum, *to strive*.
 Obliviscor, -ci, oblitus sum, *to forget*.
 Opperior, -iri, oppertus sum, *to wait for*.
 Ordior, ordiri, orsus sum, *to begin*.
 Orior, oriri, ortus sum, *to rise*.
 Paciscor, -ci, pactus sum, *to bargain*.
 Patior, pati, passus sum, *to suffer*.
 Proficiscor, -ci, profectus sum, *to set out*.
 Queror, -i, questus sum, *to complain*.
 Reor, reri, ratus sum, *to think*.
 Sequor, sequi, secutus sum, *to follow*.
 Ulciscor, ulcisci, ultus sum, *to avenge*.
 Utor, uti, usus sum, *to use*.



PART IV. DIFFICILIORA.

PART IV. DIFFICILIORA.

CONTENTS.

	PAGE		PAGE
1. Gender of the Substantive. General Rules . .	157	6. Peculiarities of the Substantive:	
2. Gender of the Third Declension:		(1) First Declension . .	171
(1) First General Rule . .	159	(2) Second Declension . .	171
(2) Second General Rule . .	159	(3) Third Declension . .	172
(3) Third General Rule . .	159	(a) Accusative Sing. . .	173
(4) Masc. Substantives . .	160	(b) Abl. Sing. <i>in i</i> . .	173
(5) Feminine „ . .	161	(c) Abl. Sing. <i>i</i> and <i>e</i> . .	174
(6) Neuter „ . .	163	(d) Genitive Plural . .	175
3. Epitome	164	(4) Fourth Declension . .	176
4. Alphabetical List of Substantives, irregular as to their Gender:		(5) Fifth Declension . .	176
(1) Masculine	165	7. Declension of Proper Names . .	177
(2) Feminine	166	8. Peculiarities of the Substantive (alphabetically arranged)	178
(3) Neuter	166	9. Roman Calendar	184
(4) Common	167	10. Roman Money	186
5. Peculiarities of the Substantive—General . .	168	11. Parsing	188
		12. Order of Latin Words . .	190
		13. Rules of Syntax . .	192–206

PART IV. DIFFICILIORA.

GENDER OF THE SUBSTANTIVE.

In giving in full the Gender of the Substantive, page 18, Part I., is repeated, to make each Part complete in itself.

THERE are three Genders; a Substantive must be either (a) Masculine, (b) Feminine, (c) Neuter. Some also are Common, *i.e.* Masculine or Feminine.

We give two common General Rules:

I. Certain classes of things are of certain Genders.

<i>Masculine.</i>	Males. Months.	People. Winds.	Mountains (<i>most</i>). Rivers (<i>most</i>).
<i>Feminine.</i>	Females. Islands.	Countries (<i>most</i>). Cities and Trees (<i>most</i>).	
<i>Neuter.</i>	Indeclinable Nouns; as, fas, nefas, nihil.		
<i>Common.</i>	Words applicable to either sex; as, Conjux, <i>husband</i> or <i>wife</i> . Hostis, <i>an enemy</i> .		

II. Genders of Substantives are in a general way also known by the terminations in each Declension.

- First. Feminine, in *a* and *e*; Masculine in *as* and *es*.
Second. Masculine, in *us* and *er*; Neuter in *um*.
Third. (a) *Masculine* terminations: *o*, *or*, *os*, *er*, *es*, increasing in gen., *ex* (not *x*).
(b) *Feminine* terminations: *is*, *as*, *aus*, *x* (not *ex*), *s* preceded by a consonant, *es* not increasing in genitive.
(c) *Neuter* terminations: *ar*, *ur*, *us*, *c*, *a*, *t*, *l*, *e*, *n*.
Fourth. Masculine in *us*; Neuter in *u*.
Fifth. Feminine.

But to these rules there are many exceptions (see pp. 158-167).

GENDER OF THE SUBSTANTIVE.

EXCEPTIONS.

DECLENSION I.

Nouns in *a* denoting Males, are Masculine ; as, *poeta, a poet.*

So also are

Hadria, Adriatic Sea.

Scurra, a buffoon.

DECLENSION II.

A few in *us* are Feminine :

Alvus, the belly.

Humus, the ground.

Arctus, the Bear (constellation).

Pampinus, vine-leaf.

Carbasus, fine flax.

Pirus, a pear-tree. (a)

Colus, a distaff.

Sapphirus, a sapphire. (b)

Vannus, a winnowing fan.

A few in *us* are Neuter :

Pelagus, the sea.

*Vulgus, the common people
(generally).*

Virus, poison.

DECLENSION III.

Exceptions are numerous (see pp. 158-167).

DECLENSION IV.

A few in *us* are Feminine :

Acus, a needle.

Manus, the hand.

Anus, an old woman.

Nurus, a daughter-in-law.

Domus, a house.

Porticus, a portico.

Idūs (pl.), the Ides.

Socrus, a mother-in-law.

Tribus, a tribe.

DECLENSION V.

All are Feminine except *dies*, which is common in the Singular, but Masculine in the Plural, and *meridies, midday*, which is Masculine.

(a) And names of plants.

(b) And names of jewels.

GENDER OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

Words of the Third Declension are of various terminations and of all genders.

Some of course may be known by their meanings; as,

Pater, <i>a father,</i>	}	are masculine.
Tiberis, <i>the Tiber,</i>		

Mulier, <i>a woman,</i>	}	are feminine.
Soror, <i>a sister,</i>		
Venus, <i>the goddess Venus,</i>		

But, as a rule, the gender in each declension must be decided by the termination.

FIRST GENERAL RULE.

Substantives are masculine which end in *o*, *or*, *os*, *er*, *es* increasing in Genitive, *ex* (not *x*).

<i>o</i> , leo, <i>a lion.</i>	<i>er</i> , anser, <i>a goose.</i>
<i>or</i> , dolor, <i>pain.</i>	<i>es</i> , pes, <i>a foot.</i>
<i>os</i> , flos, <i>a flower.</i>	<i>ex</i> , grex, <i>a flock.</i>

SECOND GENERAL RULE.

Substantives are feminine which end in *is*, *as*, *aus*, *x* (not *ex*), *s* preceded by a consonant, *es* not increasing in Gen.

<i>is</i> , navis, <i>a ship.</i>	<i>x</i> , pax, <i>peace.</i>
<i>as</i> , libertas, <i>liberty.</i>	<i>bs</i> , urbs, <i>a city.</i>
<i>aus</i> , laus, <i>praise.</i>	<i>es</i> , nubes, <i>a cloud.</i>

THIRD GENERAL RULE.

Substantives in *ar*, *ur*, *us*, *c*, *a*, *t*, *l*, *e*, *n* (catlen) are neuter.

<i>ar</i> , calcar, <i>a spur.</i>	<i>a</i> , poema, <i>a poem.</i>
<i>ur</i> , fulgur, <i>lightning.</i>	<i>t</i> , caput, <i>the head.</i>
<i>us</i> , corpus, <i>a body.</i>	<i>l</i> , animal, <i>an animal.</i>
<i>c</i> , lac, <i>milk.</i>	<i>e</i> , mare, <i>the sea.</i>

n, nomen, *a name.*

But there are many exceptions.

I. MASCULINE.

Substantives in *o*, *or*, *os*, *er*, *es* increasing, *ex* (not *x*) are masculine.

1. But though Substantives ending in *o* are *masculine*, those ending in *do*, *go*, *io* are *feminine*, and so are—

Caro	carnis	flesh
Echo	echus	an echo

The following however, though they end in *do*, *go*, *io*, are *masculine* :

Cardo	cardinis	a hinge
Ordo	ordinis	a row
Prædo	prædonis	a pirate

Harpägo	-ōnis	{ a grappling hook
Ligo	ligonis	a spade

Curculio	-ōnis	a weevil.
Papilio	-ōnis	a butterfly
Pugio	-ōnis	a dagger
Scipio	-ōnis	a staff
Septentrio	-ōnis	the North
Stellio	-ōnis	a lizard
Unio	-ōnis	a pearl
Vespertilio	-ōnis	a bat

And one in *go* is *common* :

Margo	marginis	a border
-------	----------	----------

2. Those ending in *or* are *masculine* ; but *arbor*, *arbōris*, a tree, is *feminine*, and four are *neuter*.

Ador	ādōris	spelt
Æquor	æquōris	the sea
Cor	cordis	the heart
Marmor	-ōris	marble

3. Those ending in *os* are *masc.*, but two are *feminine* :

Cos	cōtis	a whetstone
Dos	dōtis	a dowry

And two are *neuter* :

Ōs	ossis	a bone
Ōs	ōris	the mouth

4. Those ending in *er* are *masculine* ; but *linter*, *lintris*, a wherry, is *feminine*, and thirteen are *neuter* :

Acer	aceris	the maple
Cadāver	-eris	a corpse
Cicer	ciceris	the chickpea
Iter	itineris	a journey
Papaver	-eris	the poppy
Piper	-eris	pepper
Siler	sileris	an osier
Suber	suberis	the cork tree
Tuber	tuberis	a swelling
Uber	uberis	an udder
Ver	vēris	the spring
Verber	-beris	a whip
Zingiber	-eris	ginger

N.B.—The penultimate in the Genitive Case of words in previous list is short, so they are not marked; except *ver*, *vēris*, spring.

5. Those ending in *es* increasing in the Genitive Case are *masculine*, but seven are *feminine*.

Compes	compēdis	<i>a fetter</i>
Merces	mercēdis	<i>wages</i>
Merges	mergītis	<i>a sheaf of corn</i>
Quies	quiētis	<i>rest</i>
Requies	requiētis	<i>rest</i>
Seges	segētis	<i>standing corn</i>
Teges	tegētis	<i>a mat</i>

And one in *æs* is *neuter* :

æs	æris	<i>copper (money)</i>
----	------	-----------------------

And three are *common* :

Ales	alitis	<i>a bird</i>
Comes	comitis	<i>a companion</i>
Heres	herēdis	<i>an heir or heiress</i>

6. Those ending in *ex* are *masc.*, but six are *feminine* :

Carex	caricis	<i>a kind of rush</i>
Faex	faecis	<i>sediment</i>
Forfex	forficis	<i>a pair of shears</i>
Lex	legis	<i>a law</i>
Nex	nēcis	<i>a violent death</i>
Supellex	-lectilis	<i>furniture</i>

And ten are *common* :

Artifex	artificis	<i>an artificer</i>
Imbrex	imbricis	<i>a hollow tile</i>
Index	indicis	<i>an informer</i>
Judex	judicis	<i>a judge</i>
Obex	obicis	<i>a bolt</i>
Opifex	opificis	<i>a workman</i>
Pūmex	pumicis	<i>pumice stone</i>
Rūmex	rumicis	<i>sorrel</i>
Silex	silicis	<i>a flint</i>
Vindex	vindicis	<i>an avenger</i>

II. FEMININE.

Substantives are *feminine* which end in *is*, *as*, *aus*, *x*, *s* preceded by a consonant, *es* not increasing.

1. Those ending in *is* are *fem.*, but many are *masculine*.

Amnis	-is	<i>a river</i>
Annālis	-is	<i>a year-book</i>
Axis	-is	<i>an axle</i>
Canālis	-is	<i>a canal</i>
Casses	-ium (pl.)	<i>a snare</i>
Caulis	-is	<i>a stalk</i>
Clunis	-is	<i>a buttock</i>
Collis	-is	<i>a hill</i>
Crinis	-is	<i>hair</i>
Cucumis	-is (ēris)	<i>a cucumber</i>
Ensis	-is	<i>a sword</i>
Fascis	-is	<i>a bundle</i>
Follis	-is	<i>a pair of bellows</i>
Fustis	-is	<i>a cudgel</i>
Glis	gliris	<i>a dormouse</i>
Ignis	ignis	<i>fire</i>
Lapis	lapidis	<i>a stone</i>
Mensis	-is	<i>a month</i>
Mugilis	-is	<i>a mullet</i>
Natalis	-is	<i>a birthday</i>
Orbis	-is	<i>a circle</i>
Panis	-is	<i>bread</i>
Piscis	-is	<i>a fish</i>
Postis	-is	<i>a door-post</i>
Pulvis	-ēris	<i>dust</i>

(see over)

Sanguis	-guinis	blood
Torris	-is	a fire-brand
Unguis	-is	finger or toe-nail
Vectis	-is	a lever
Vermis	-is	a worm
Vōmis (er) -ēris		a ploughshare

For those sometimes *fem.*, see those with an asterisk, pp. 165, 166.

2. Those ending in *as* are *fem.*, but six are *masculine*:

Adamas	-antis	a diamond
As	assis	a Roman coin
Elephas	-antis	an elephant
Gigas	-antis	a giant
Mas	māris	a male
Vas	vādis	a surety

And one is *neuter*:

Vas	vasis	a vessel.
-----	-------	-----------

3. Those ending in *aus* are *feminine*, and there are no exceptions.

4. Those ending in *x* are *fem.*, but three in *ix* are *masculine*:

Calix	calicis	a cup
Fornix	fornicis	an arch
Phoenix	phoenicis	the phoenix

And two in *ux* are *common*:

Conjux	conjugis	a husband or wife
Dux	ducis	a guide

Note those in *ex* on p. 161.

5. Those ending in *s* preceded by a consonant are *feminine*, but thirteen are *masculine*:

Bidens	bidentis	a hoe
Chalybs	chalŷbis	steel
Dens	dentis	a tooth
Fons	fontis	a fountain
Gryps	grŷphis	a griffin
Hydrops	hydrōpis	dropsy
Mons	montis	a mountain
Occidens	occidentis	the West
Oriens	orientis	the East
Pons	pontis	a bridge
Rudens	rudentis	a cable
Tridens	tridentis	a trident
Triens	trientis	a third part

And seven are *common*:

Adeps	adŷpis	fat
Adolescens	-entis	a youth
Infans	infantis	an infant
Munŷceps	municipis	a burgess
Parens	parentis	a parent
Princeps	principis	a chief
Serpens	-entis	a serpent

6. Those ending in *es* not increasing are *feminine*, but two are *masculine*:

Acināces	-is	a scimitar
Verres	-is	a boar-pig

And one is *common*:

Vates	vatis	a seer
-------	-------	--------

III. NEUTER.

Substantives in *ar, ur, us, c, a, t, l, e, n*, are *neuter*.

1. Substantives ending in *ar* are *neuter*,—but one is *masculine* :

Lar laris *household deity*

2. Those ending in *ur* are *neuter*, but four are *masculine* :

Fur	furis	<i>a thief</i>
Furfur	furfūris	<i>bran</i>
Turtur	turtūris	<i>a turtle dove</i>
Vultur	vultūris	<i>a vulture</i>

3. Those ending in *us* are *neuter*, but two are *masculine* :

Lepus	lepōris	<i>a hare</i>
Mus	muris	<i>a mouse</i>

Nine are *feminine* :

Incus	incūdis	<i>an anvil</i>
Juventus	juventutis	<i>youth</i>
Palus	palūdis	<i>a marsh</i>
Pecus	pecūdis	<i>cattle</i>
Salus	salūtis	<i>safety</i>
Senectus	senectūtis	<i>old age</i>
Servitus	servitutis	<i>slavery</i>
Tellus	tellūris	<i>the earth</i>
Virtus	virtutis	<i>virtue</i>

And two are *common* :

Grus	gruris	<i>a crane</i>
Sus	suis	<i>a swine</i>

4. Those ending in *c, a, t*, and *e* are *neuter*, and there are no exceptions.

5. Those ending in *l* are *neuter*, but five are *masculine* :

Consul	consulis	<i>a consul</i>
Mugil	mugīlis	<i>a mullet</i>
Pugil	pugīlis	<i>a boxer</i>
Sal	salis	<i>salt</i>
Sol	solis	<i>the sun</i>

6. Those ending in *n* are *neuter*, but eight are *masculine* :

Attagen	attagēnis	<i>a heathcock</i>
Delphin	delphīnis	<i>a dolphin</i>
Fīdīcen	-inis	<i>a lute-player</i>
Lien	liēnis	<i>the spleen</i>
Pecten	pectīnis	<i>a comb</i>
Renes	renum (pl.)	<i>the kidneys</i>
Splēn	splēnis	<i>the spleen</i>
Tibīcen	-īnis	<i>a flute-player</i>

Three in *on* are *feminine* :

Gorgon	Gorgonis	<i>Gorgon</i>
Halcyon	halcyōnis	<i>a kingfisher</i>
Sindon	sindōnis	<i>fine linen</i>

EPITOME.

As a rule the genders must be decided by the terminations, as follows, but there are many exceptions.

Masculine : o, or, os, er, es *increasing*, ex (*not* x).

Feminine : is, as, aus, x, s preceded by a consonant, es *not increasing*.

Neuter : ar, ur, us, c, a, t, l, e, n (catlen).

MASCULINE.

1. Words ending in o : but those in *do*, *go*, *io* are feminine, three in *do*, two in *go*, eight in *io* are however masculine; and one in *go* is common.

MASCULINE.

2. Words ending in *or*.
But *one* is feminine,
And *four* are neuter.
3. Words ending in *os*.
But *two* are feminine,
And *two* are neuter.
4. Words ending in *er*.
But *one* is feminine,
And *thirteen* are neuter.
5. Words ending in *es*, increasing.
But *seven* are feminine,
And *one* is neuter.
And *three* are common.
6. Words in *ex* (*not* x).
But *six* are feminine,
And *ten* are common.

FEMININE.

1. Words ending in *is*.
But *many* are masculine
2. Words ending in *as*.
But *six* are masculine,
And *one* is neuter.
3. Words ending in *aus*.
4. Words ending in *x*.
But *three* in *ix* are masculine,
And *two* in *ux* are common.
Note words in ex (opposite column).
5. Words in *s* after a consonant.
But *thirteen* are masculine,
And *seven* are common.
6. Words in *es* not increasing.
But *two* are masculine.
And *one* is common.

NEUTER.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Words ending in <i>ar</i>.
But <i>one</i> is masculine. 2. Words ending in <i>ur</i>.
But <i>four</i> are masculine. 3. Words ending in <i>us</i>.
But <i>two</i> are masculine,
And <i>nine</i> are feminine,
And <i>two</i> are common. | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4. Words in <i>c, a, t, e</i>.
There are no exceptions. 5. Words ending in <i>l</i>.
But <i>five</i> are masculine. 6. Words ending in <i>n</i>.
But <i>eight</i> are masculine,
And <i>three</i> (in <i>on</i>) are feminine. |
|--|--|

SUBSTANTIVES IRREGULAR IN GENDER.

(Alphabetically arranged.)

MASCULINE.

Acināces	acinacis	<i>scimitar</i>	Gryps	<i>gryphis</i>	<i>a griffin</i>
Adamas	adamantis	<i>adamant</i>	Harpago	<i>harpagōnis</i>	<i>{ a grappling hook</i>
Amnis	amnis	<i>a river</i>	Hydrops	<i>hydrōpis</i>	<i>dropsy</i>
Annālis	annalis	<i>a year-book</i>	Ignis	<i>ignis</i>	<i>fire</i>
As	assis	<i>a Roman coin</i>	Lapis	<i>lapidis</i>	<i>a stone</i>
Attagen	attagēnis	<i>a heathcock</i>	Lepus	<i>lepōris</i>	<i>a hare</i>
Axis	axis	<i>an axle</i>	Lien	<i>liēnis</i>	<i>spleen</i>
Bidens	bidentis	<i>a hoe</i>	Ligo	<i>ligonis</i>	<i>a spade</i>
Calix	calicis	<i>a cup</i>	Mas	<i>māris</i>	<i>a male</i>
*Callis	callis	<i>a path</i>	Mensis	<i>mensis</i>	<i>a month</i>
Canālis	canalis	<i>a canal</i>	Mons	<i>montis</i>	<i>a mountain</i>
Cardo	cardīnis	<i>a hinge</i>	Mugil (-is)	<i>mugīlis</i>	<i>a mullet</i>
Casses	cassium	<i>a net</i>	Mus	<i>muris</i>	<i>a mouse</i>
Caulis	caulis	<i>a stalk</i>	Natalis	<i>natalis</i>	<i>a birthday</i>
Chalybs	chalýbis	<i>steel</i>	Occidens	<i>occidentis</i>	<i>the West</i>
*Cinis	cinēris	<i>ashes</i>	Orbis	<i>orbis</i>	<i>a circle</i>
Clunis	-is	<i>a buttock</i>	Ordo	<i>ordinis</i>	<i>a row</i>
Collis	collis	<i>a hill</i>	Oriens	<i>orientis</i>	<i>the East</i>
Consul	consulis	<i>a consul</i>	Panis	<i>panis</i>	<i>bread</i>
Crinis	crinis	<i>hair</i>	Papilio	<i>papilionis</i>	<i>a butterfly</i>
Cucūmis	-cumeris	<i>a cucumber</i>	Pecten	<i>pectinis</i>	<i>a comb</i>
Curculio	-culionis	<i>a weevil</i>	Phoenix	<i>phœnicis</i>	<i>the phœnix</i>
Delphin	delphinis	<i>a dolphin</i>	Piscis	<i>piscis</i>	<i>a fish</i>
Dens	dentis	<i>a tooth</i>	Pons	<i>pontis</i>	<i>a bridge</i>
Elephas	-phantis	<i>an elephant</i>	Postis	<i>postis</i>	<i>a door-post</i>
Ensis	ensis	<i>a sword</i>	Prædo	<i>prædonis</i>	<i>a pirate</i>
Fascis	fascis	<i>a bundle</i>	Pugil	<i>pugilis</i>	<i>a boxer</i>
*Finis	finis	<i>an end</i>	Pugio	<i>pugionis</i>	<i>a dagger</i>
Follis	follis	<i>{ a pair of bellows</i>	Pulvis	<i>pulvērīs</i>	<i>dust</i>
Fons	fontis	<i>a fountain</i>	Rēnes	<i>rēnum</i>	<i>the kidneys</i>
Fornix	fornicis	<i>an arch</i>	Rudens	<i>rudentis</i>	<i>a cable</i>
*Funis	funis	<i>a rope</i>	Sal	<i>salis</i>	<i>salt</i>
Fur	furis	<i>a thief</i>	Sanguis	<i>sanguinis</i>	<i>blood</i>
Furfur	furfūris	<i>bran</i>	Scipio	<i>scipionis</i>	<i>a staff</i>
Fustis	fustis	<i>a cudgel</i>	*Sentis	<i>sentis</i>	<i>a bramble</i>
Gigas	gigantis	<i>a giant</i>	Septentrio	<i>-trionis</i>	<i>the North</i>
Glis	gliris	<i>a dormouse</i>			

Sol	solis	<i>the sun</i>	Unio	unionis	<i>a pearl</i>
Splēn	splēnis	<i>spleen</i>	Vas	vadis	<i>a surety</i>
Stellio	stellionis	<i>a lizard</i>	Vectis	vectis	<i>a lever</i>
*Torquis	torquis	<i>a necklace</i>	Vermis	vermis	<i>a worm</i>
Torris	torris	<i>a fire-brand</i>	Verres	verris	<i>a boar-pig</i>
Tridens	tridentis	<i>a trident</i>	Vespertilio	-lionis	<i>a bat</i>
Triens	trientis	<i>a third part</i>	Vomis (er)	vomēris	<i>a ploughshare</i>
Turtur	turturis	<i>a turtle dove</i>	Vultur	vultūris	<i>a vulture</i>
Unguis	unguis	<i>the nail</i>			

A few words in *is* in this list marked * are sometimes feminine (see p. 162).

FEMININE.

Arbor	arbōris	<i>a tree</i>	Lintor	lintris	<i>a wherry</i>
Carex	caricis	<i>a kind of rush</i>	Merces	mercedis	<i>wages</i>
Caro	carnis	<i>flesh</i>	Merges	mergitis	<i>a sheaf of corn</i>
Compes	compēdis	<i>a fetter</i>	Nex	necis	<i>a violent death</i>
Cos	cotis	<i>a whetstone</i>	Palus	palūdis	<i>a marsh</i>
Dos	dotis	<i>a dowry</i>	Pecus	pecūdis	<i>cattle</i>
Echo	echūs	<i>an echo</i>	Quies	quiētis	<i>rest</i>
Faex	faecis	<i>sediment</i>	Requies	requiētis	<i>rest</i>
Forfex	forficis	<i>a pair of shears</i>	Salus	salutis	<i>safety</i>
Gorgon	Gorgonis	<i>Gorgon</i>	Seges	segetis	<i>standing corn</i>
Halcyon	halcyonis	<i>a kingfisher</i>	Senectus	-tutis	<i>old age</i>
Ilex	ilicis	<i>the holm-oak</i>	Servitus	-tutis	<i>slavery</i>
Incus	incūdis	<i>an anvil</i>	Sindon	sindonis	<i>fine linen</i>
Inquies	inquietis	<i>restlessness</i>	Supellex	-lectilis	<i>furniture</i>
Juventus	juventutis	<i>youth</i>	Teges	tegetis	<i>a mat</i>
Lex	legis	<i>a law</i>	Tellus	telluris	<i>the earth</i>
			Virtus	virtutis	<i>virtue</i>

NEUTER.

Acer	aceris	<i>the maple</i>	Papaver	papaveris	<i>the poppy</i>
Ador	adōris	<i>spelt</i>	Piper	pipēris	<i>pepper</i>
Æquor	æquōris	<i>the sea</i>	Siler	silēris	<i>an osier</i>
Æs	æris	<i>copper</i>	Suber	subēris	<i>a cork tree</i>
Cadāver	cadaveris	<i>a corpse</i>	Tuber	tubēris	<i>a swelling</i>
Cicer	ciceris	<i>the chickpea</i>	Uber	ubēris	<i>an udder</i>
Cor	cordis	<i>the heart</i>	Vas	vasis	<i>a vessel</i>
Iter	itineris	<i>a journey</i>	Ver	vēris	<i>spring</i>
Marmor	marmoris	<i>marble</i>	Verber	verbēris	<i>a whip</i>
Os	oris	<i>the mouth</i>	Zingiber	zingibēris	<i>ginger</i>
Os	ossis	<i>a bone</i>			

COMMON.

Adeps	adīpis	<i>fat</i>	Index	indīcis	<i>an informer</i>
Adolescens	-entis	<i>a youth</i>	Infans	infantis	<i>an infant</i>
Advēna	-vēnæ	<i>a stranger</i>	Interpres	-prētis	<i>an interpreter</i>
Ales	alitis	<i>a bird</i>	Judex	judīcis	<i>a judge</i>
Anguis	anguis	<i>a snake</i>	Margo	marginis	<i>a border</i>
Artifex	artificis	<i>an artificer</i>	Municeps	municīpis	<i>a burgess</i>
Auctor	auctoris	<i>an author</i>	Obex	obīcis	<i>a bolt</i>
Bos	bovis	<i>an ox</i>	Obses	obsīdis	<i>a hostage</i>
Canis	canis	<i>a dog</i>	Opifex	opificis	<i>a workman</i>
Civis	civis	<i>a citizen</i>	Parens	parentis	<i>a parent</i>
Cliens	clientis	<i>a client</i>	Pollis	pollinis	<i>fine flour</i>
Comes	comitis	<i>a companion</i>	Princeps	principis	<i>a chief</i>
Conjux	conjugis	{ <i>a husband or</i> <i>wife</i>	Pumex	pumicis	{ <i>pumice</i> <i>stone</i>
Conviva	convivæ	<i>a guest</i>	Rumex	rumicis	<i>sorrel</i>
Custos	custodis	<i>a guardian</i>	Sacerdos	sacerdotis	{ <i>a priest or</i> <i>priestess</i>
Dama	damæ	<i>a deer</i>	Serpens	serpentis	<i>a serpent</i>
Dux	ducis	<i>a guide</i>	Silex	silicis	<i>a flint</i>
Exul	exulis	<i>an exile</i>	Sus	suis	<i>a swine</i>
Grus	gruis	<i>a crane</i>	Talpa	talpæ	<i>a mole</i>
Heres	heredis	{ <i>an heir or</i> <i>heiress</i>	Testis	testis	<i>a witness</i>
Hostis	hostis	<i>an enemy</i>	Tigris	tigrīdis	<i>a tiger</i>
Imbrex	imbricis	<i>a hollow tile</i>	Vates	vatis	<i>a seer</i>
Incola	incolæ	<i>an inhabitant</i>	Vindex	vindīcis	<i>an avenger</i>

The following five are rarely found masculine :

Dama	damæ	<i>a deer</i>	Sus	suis	<i>a swine</i>
Grus	gruis	<i>a crane</i>	Talpa	talpæ	<i>a mole</i>
		Tigris	tigrīdis	<i>a tiger</i>	

The following six, though common, are rarely found feminine :

Augur	auguris	<i>an augur</i>	Hostis	hostis	<i>an enemy</i>
Auriga	aurigæ	<i>a charioteer</i>	Miles	militis	<i>a soldier</i>
Hospes	hospitis	<i>a guest</i>	Præses	præsīdis	<i>a guardian</i>

PECULIARITIES OF THE SUBSTANTIVE.

There are many irregularities in the Substantive which require notice.

1. Some Substantives are not declined ; as,

fas.	nefas.	nihil.	instar.
------	--------	--------	---------

2. Some Substantives are used in the Singular number only.

Argentum, <i>silver.</i>	Ævum, <i>age.</i>
Aurum, <i>gold.</i>	Letum, <i>death.</i>
Ferrum, <i>iron.</i>	Sanguis, <i>blood.</i>
Plebs, <i>the common people.</i>	Pueritia, <i>boyhood.</i>
Justitia, <i>justice.</i>	* Aer, <i>air.</i>
Ver, <i>the spring.</i>	Æther, <i>the sky.</i>

With many more.

* A Plural occurs in Lucretius.

3. Some are used in the Plural number only.

Manes, <i>ghosts.</i>	Nugæ, <i>trifles.</i>
Liberi, <i>children.</i>	Grates, <i>thanks.</i>
Penates, <i>household gods.</i>	Arma, <i>arms.</i>
Divitiæ, <i>riches.</i>	Munia, <i>functions (office).</i>
Cunæ, <i>a cradle.</i>	Magalia, <i>huts.</i>

With many more.

4. Some Substantives want one or more cases.

The following have no Nom. ; viz. :

(daps) dāpis (f.) *a feast.*
 (ditio) ditionis (f.) *a dominion.*
 (frux) frugis (f.) *fruit.*
 (ops) ōpis (f.) *strength.*
 and others.

5. Some take two forms, though of the same declension, as

Jocus, *a jest* ; plur., joci and joca.
 Locus, *a place* ; plur., loci, loca.
 Frenum, *a bit* ; plur., freni, frena.
 Rastrum, *a harrow* ; plur., rastri, rastra.

6. Some Substantives have a twofold declension, and so are called *Heteroclita*; e.g. *domus*, a *house*.

7. In the second declension some Substantives end in *us* and *um*; as—

Callus, *callum*, *hardened skin*.

Commentarius, *commentarium*, a *note book*.

8. Some fluctuate between the first and second declension; as—

Menda, *mendum*, a *fault*.

Vespera, *vesper*, the *evening*.

9. Some fluctuate between the first and fifth; as—

Barbaria, *barbaries*, *barbarism*.

Luxuria, *luxuries*, *luxury*.

Materia, *materies*, *matter*.

Mollitia, *mollities*, *softness*.

10. Some fluctuate between the second and third; as—

Delphinus, *-i*, and *delphin*, *delphinis*, a *dolphin*.

Elephantus, *-i*, and *elephas*, *elephantis*, an *elephant*.

Tergum, *-i*, and *tergus*, *tergëris*, a *back*.

11. Some fluctuate between the second and fourth; as—

<i>Cupressus</i> ,	<i>-ūs</i> ,	and <i>-i</i> ,	a <i>cypress</i> .
<i>Domus</i>	<i>domūs</i> ,	and <i>domi</i> ,	a <i>house</i> .
<i>Ficus</i> ,	<i>ficūs</i> ,	and <i>fici</i> ,	a <i>fig tree</i> .
<i>Laurus</i> ,	<i>laurūs</i> ,	and <i>lauri</i> ,	a <i>bay tree</i> .
<i>Pinus</i> ,	<i>pinūs</i> ,	and <i>pini</i> ,	a <i>pine tree</i> .
<i>Eventus</i> (4),	<i>eventum</i> (2),		an <i>occurrence</i> .
<i>Suggestus</i> (4),	<i>suggestum</i> (2),		a <i>platform for speakers</i> .

12. Some fluctuate between the third and fifth; as—

Plebs, *plebis*; as also *plebes*, *plebis*; as also *plebes*, *plebei*, and *plebi*,
common *people*.

13. Some vary their declension in the two numbers :

Jugĕrum, *an acre*; Sing., second declension; Plural, third.

Vas, vasis, *a vessel*; Sing., third declension; Plural, second.

14. Some Substantives have a different meaning in the Singular and the Plural.

Ædes, *a temple*.

Aqua, *water*.

Auxilium, *help*.

Carcer, *a prison*.

Castrum, *a fort*.

Copia, *plenty*.

Gratia, *favour*.

Impedimentum, *a hindrance*.

Littera, *a letter (alphabet)*.

Ludus, *play, school*.

Opera, *exertion*.

Ōpis (Gen.), *help*.

Rostrum, *a beak*.

Tabula, *a board*.

P. Ædes, *a house*.

Aquæ, *medicinal springs*.

Auxilia, *auxiliary forces*.

Carceres, *a starting place*.

Castra, *a camp*.

Copiæ, *forces*.

Gratiæ, *thanks*.

Impedimenta, *baggage*.

Litteræ, *an epistle*.

Ludi, *public games*.

Operæ, *workmen*.

Ōpes, *power, wealth*.

Rostra, *a platform for speakers*.

Tabulæ, *writing tablets*.

With others.

15. Many have only certain cases; but these will be given elsewhere.

16. The following have a full plural, but only the ablative in the singular :

Ambage (f.), *a circuit*.

Casse (m.), *a snare*.

Fauce (f.), *the throat*.

Verbere (n.), *a stripe*.

With others.

Verbere has also, according to Ovid, a Gen. : *verberis*.

FIRST DECLENSION.

1.

The Dative and Ablative of some words end in *abus*.

Dea, a goddess, deabus.
Filia, a daughter, filiabus.
Nata, a daughter, natabus.
 And others.

2.

The two following words have Gen. Plur. in *um*.

Cœlicola, a dwelling in heaven, cœlicolûm.
Terrigena, earth-born, terrigenûm.

3.

Two words have old Genitive in *as* remaining,

Paterfamilias, master of a family.
Materfamilias, mother of a family.

4.

Æneas, Æneas, Æneas.

Voc., *Ænea.*

Acc., *Æneam* or *Ænean.*

Greek Substantives in *e* and *es* are given on p. 177.

SECOND DECLENSION.

1.

Deus, a god, is irregular; p. 177.

2.

Filius, a son, makes—

Voc., *fili (mî fili, my son).*
 Gen., *fili* or *fili*.

And proper names in *ius* are like *filius*; as, *Lælius, Læli*; so is also *genius*.

3.

Jocus, a jest.
Locus, a place.
Frenum, a bit.
Rastrum, a rake.

} Have in Plural,
 Nom., *i* and *a*;
 Acc., *os* and *a*.

4.

Pelagus, the sea.
Virus, poison.
Vulgus, the common people.

} Have no plural.

5.

Carbasus, fine flax, Nom.P. carbasa,
Tartarus, Tartarus, Tartara.

6.

Adulter, an adulterer.
Armiger, an armour-bearer.

Gener, a son-in-law.
Liber, Bacchus.
Liberi, children.
Puer, a boy.
Signifer, a sign-bearer.
Socer, a father-in-law.
Vesper, evening.

} Are the only words in *er* that keep the *e* in all cases.

7.

Faber, a smith, Gen. Plur., fabrorum and fabrum.
Nummus, money, Gen. P., nummûm and nummorum.

For Greek Substantives, *Delos, Orpheus,* see p.177.

THIRD DECLENSION.

(With Adjectives.)

1. The terminations of the Substantives of this declension are many and various. Some grammars give at full length as many as *thirty* samples; but this adds considerably to what a boy *thinks* he has to learn. Three, or at most *four*, as samples, are quite sufficient.

Nubes, *because it does not increase.*

Lapis, *because it does increase.*

Opus, *because it is neuter.*

Mare, *because it makes ia in the Plural.*

2. But it must be *well noted* that the Genitive Singular *must* be known, and then nearly every Substantive, whatever its termination, can be gone through regularly.
3. Some Substantives have more syllables in the Genitive than they have in the Nominative, hence they are called *increasing*, the proper word being imparisyllabic (not equal in syllables), as those which do not increase are called parisyllabic (equal in syllables).
4. There is generally with learners a difficulty as to the Genitive Plural, whether it ends in *um* or *ium*. But the general rule is,

The Genitive Plural of *increasing*
nouns is *um* and not *ium*.

In other words, if the word increases in the Genitive Singular it does not further increase in the Genitive Plural; but there are exceptions, which will be given presently.

There are peculiarities also in the Acc. and Abl. Singular.

THIRD DECLENSION.

ACCUSATIVE AND ABLATIVE SINGULAR.

ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR.

The Accusative Singular is
im not *em*

1. In the five words—

Amussis	<i>a rule</i>
(Ravis) ravim	<i>hoarseness</i>
Sitis	<i>thirst</i>
Tussis	<i>a cough</i>
Vis	<i>violence</i>

2. And in the names of towns and rivers in *is*; as—

Hispālis	<i>Seville</i>
Tiberis	<i>the Tiber</i>

The Accusative Singular is
im or *em* in the nine
words—

Clavis	<i>a key</i>
Febris	<i>fever</i>
Messis	<i>a harvest</i>
Navis	<i>a ship</i>
Pelvis	<i>a basin</i>
Puppis	<i>the stern of a ship</i>
Restis	<i>a rope</i>
Securis	<i>an axe</i>
Turris	<i>a tower</i>
and others.	

ABLATIVE SINGULAR IN I.

The Ablative singular has *i*
not *ē*—

1. In all words where the Acc. is *im* only: as *siti*, *Tiberi*.

2. In Neuter nouns that end in *e*, *al*, *ar*, as—

N. Mare	Abl. Mari
Animal	Animali
Calcar	Calcāri

3. Substantives in *ar*—the Gen. of which is not *āris* (*ā* long)—have *e* in the Ablative; as—

Baccar	baccāris	<i>a sweet herb</i>
Far	farris	<i>spelt</i>
Jubar	jubāris	<i>a sunbeam</i>
Nectar	nectāris	<i>nectar</i>

4. Adjectives ending in *is*, *e*; *er*, *is*, *e*: as—

Tristis	<i>sad</i>	tristi
Acer	<i>sharp</i>	acri

THIRD DECLENSION.

ABLATIVE SINGULAR IN *i* AND *e*.

The Ablative Singular has both *i* and *e*,

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>1. In most words where the Accusative is <i>im</i> and <i>em</i>; as, puppi and puppe.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Also in</p> <p>Avis <i>a bird</i></p> <p>Ignis <i>fire</i></p> <p>Inber <i>rain</i></p> <p>Supellex <i>household utensils</i></p> | <p>Restis, <i>a rope</i>, has only <i>reste</i>.</p> <p>Securis, <i>an axe</i>, has only <i>securi</i>.</p> <p>2. In <i>Adjectives</i> which have in Nominative one termination; and in Comparatives; as—</p> <p>Prudens <i>prudent</i> <i>ti</i> and <i>te</i></p> <p>Altior <i>higher</i> <i>ri</i> and <i>re</i></p> |
|---|---|

But the following *Adjectives* have *e* only.

Cœlebs	cœlibis	<i>unmarried</i>
Compos	compōtis	<i>master of</i>
Deses	desidis	<i>lazy</i>
Impos	impōtis	<i>not master of</i>
Pauper	pauperis	<i>poor</i>
Princeps	principis	<i>chief</i>
Pubes	puberis	<i>adult</i>
Superstes	superstitis	<i>surviving</i>

Memor, *mindful*, has only *i*. The Participles in *ns* generally have when used as Epithets, but otherwise *e*.

NEUTER PLURAL IN *ia*.

The Nom., Voc., Acc. Plural of Neuter Nouns have *ia*.

1. In Substantives the Nom. Sing. of which ends in *e*, *al*, *ar* (Gen. *āris*); as—
- | | | |
|--------|------------------|----------|
| Mare | <i>the sea</i> | maria |
| Animal | <i>an animal</i> | animalia |
| Calcar | <i>a spur</i> | calcaria |
2. In *Adjectives* which have the Abl. Sing. in *i* alone, or in *i* and *e*, except Comparatives; as—
- gravis, gravia; prudens, prudentia.
- But
- melior, meliora; altior, altiora, etc.

THIRD DECLENSION.

GENITIVE PLURAL.

The general rule, as before stated, is that words that *do not* increase in Gen. Sing. *do* increase in Gen. Plural, and have *ium*; if they *do* increase in Gen. Sing., they *do not* further increase in Gen. Plural, and have only *um*; as,

	Hostis	hostis	<i>an enemy</i>	hostium.
	Nubes	nubis	<i>a cloud</i>	nubium.
But,	Lapis	lapidis	<i>a stone</i>	lapidum.
	Judex	judicis	<i>a judge</i>	judicium.

But there are exceptions.

1. The following six and others, though they do not increase in the Gen. Sing., have *um* in Gen. Plural.

Canis	canis	<i>a dog.</i>	Mater	matris	<i>a mother.</i>
Frater	fratris	<i>a brother.</i>	Pater	patris	<i>a father.</i>
Juvenis	juvenis	<i>a youth.</i>	Vates	vatis	<i>a prophet.</i>

2. The following three have *um* or *ium*.

Apis	apis	<i>a bee.</i>
Mensis	mensis	<i>a month.</i>
Sedes	sedis	<i>a seat.</i>

3. Monosyllables, the stem of which ends in two consonants, though they increase in the Gen. Sing., have *ium* in the Gen. Plural, except *Lynx*.

Arx	arcis	<i>a citadel.</i>
As (stem <i>ass</i>)	assis	<i>a Roman coin.</i>
Mons	montis	<i>a mountain.</i>
Os (stem <i>oss</i>)	ossis	<i>a bone.</i>

4. Several monosyllables, the stems of which end in a single consonant, though they increase in the Gen. Sing., have *ium* in the Gen. Plur.; as

Faux	faucis	<i>the throat.</i>	Mus	muris	<i>a mouse.</i>
Glis	gliris	<i>a dormouse.</i>	Nix	nivis	<i>snow.</i>
Lis	litis	<i>a law-suit.</i>	Strix	strigis	<i>an owl.</i>
Mas	maris	<i>a male.</i>	Vis	vis	<i>strength.</i>

5. The Gen. Plural generally ends in *ium*, sometimes with *us* in *um*, in words the Nom. Sing. of which is *ens*:

Ollens	clientis	<i>a client.</i>
Adolescens	-entis	<i>a youth.</i>
Prudens (Adj.)	-entis	<i>prudent.</i>

FOURTH DECLENSION.

1. The Dative Singular *ui* is often contracted into *u*: as, *gradu*, *gradu*.
2. The following eleven words have the Dative and Ablative Plural in *ubus*; some have both forms, *ubus* and *ibus*.

Acus	acus	a needle	Portus	portus	a harbour
Arcus	arcus	a bow	Quercus	quercus	an oak
Artūs	artuum	joints	Specus	specus	a cave
Lacus	lacus	a lake	Tribus	tribus	a tribe
Partus	partus	a birth	Pecu		cattle
		Veru	verūs	a spit	

3. *Domus*, a house, belongs partly to the second declension and partly to the fourth—declined see next page.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

1. All words are Feminine except *meridies* (*m.*) and *dies*, which is *common* in the Singular, but must be *masculine* in the Plural.
2. In the Gen. and Dat. Singular the *ei* is sometimes contracted into *ē*; as, *diei diē*, *fidei fidē*.
3. *Res* and *dies* are the only words of this declension which have a complete plural.

4. Acies	aciēi	a line of battle	Series	a series
Effigies	-ēi	an image	Species	-ei an appearance
Facies	-ēi	a face	Spes	spēi hope

have Nom., Voc., Acc. Plural. No other words of the declension have any Plural at all, except *res*, *dies*, mentioned above, and Virgil gives a Plural to *glacies* (*Georg.* IV. 517).

5. In Gen. and Dat. Singular the *e* in *ei* is long after a vowel, as *diēi*, *faciēi*, but doubtful after a consonant, as *fides*, *fidēi*.

DECLENSION OF PROPER NAMES AND
IRREGULAR SUBSTANTIVES.

FIRST DECLENSION.

S. N. Epitome	An abridgment	S. Cybēle
V. Epitome		Cybele
A. Epitomen		Cybelēn
G. Epitomes		Cybeles, Cybelæ
D. Epitomæ		Cybelæ
A. Epitome		Cybele, Cybela

S. N. Anchises	S. Æneas
V. Anchise (-a)	Ænea
A. Anchisen (-am)	Æneān (-am)
G. Anchisæ	Æneæ
D. Anchisæ	Æneæ
A. Anchise (-a)	Ænea

S. N. Thesidēs	P. Thesidæ
V. Thesidē (-ā, -ā)	Thesidæ
-A. Thesidēn (-am)	Thesidas
G. Thesidæ	Thesidum
D. Thesidæ	Thesidis
A. Thesidē (-ā)	Thesidis

SECOND DECLENSION.

S. N. Deus (God)	P. Dei, Dii, Di
V. Deus	Dei, Dii, Di
A. Deum	Deos
G. Dei	Deorum, Deum
D. Deo	Deis, Diis, Dis
A. Deo	Deis, Diis, Dis

S. N. Domus	P. Domūs	A house
V. Domus	Domus	
A. Domum	Domus, domos	
G. Domūs	Domuum, -orum	
D. Domui or domo	Domibus	
A. Domo	Domibus	

SINGULAR.

N. Delos	G. Deli
V. Dele	D. Delo
A. Delon (-um)	A. Delo

THIRD DECLENSION.

S. N. Achilles -eūs	S. Pallas
V. Achille -eu	Pallas
A. Achillem, } -ēn, -ēā	Palladem, -ā
G. Achillis, } -ēī, -ī, -ēōs	Palladis, -os
D. Achilli	Palladī
A. Achillē	Palladē

S. N. Paris	S. Pericles
V. Parī	Periclēs, -ēs, -ē
A. Parīdem, -a, } Parin -im }	Periclem, -ēā
G. Paridis, -dos	Periclis, Pericli
D. Paridī	Pericli
A. Paridē	Pericle

S. N. Socrātes	S. Thales
V. Socrates, } Socrate }	Thales, -e
A. Socratem, -ēn	Thalem, -ēn, ētā
G. Socratīs, -ī	Thalis, Thalētis
D. Socrati	Thalī, Thalētī
A. Socratē, -ē	Thalē, Thalētē

S. N. Chlamys	P. Chlamyḍēs,
V. Chlamy	
A. -dem, -a	Chlamydes, -as
G. -dis	Chlamydum
D. Chlamydi	Chlamydidibus
A. Chlamyde	Chlamydidibus

S. N. Sappho	N. Orpheus
V. Sapphō	V. Orpheu
A. Sappho, -nem	A. Orpheum, -ea
G. Sapphūs, -onis	G. Orphei, -eos
D. Sappho, -oni	D. Orpheo, -ēī, -ei
A. Sappho, -one	A. Orpheo

PECULIARITIES OF SUBSTANTIVES AND ADJECTIVES.

Acer (adj.), *acris, e, sharp.* Abl. Sing., *acri*; Nom., Voc., and Acc. Plur. Neut., *acria*; Gen. Plur. *acrium*.

Acies, *aciei* (f.), *a line of battle.* Only Nom., Voc., Acc., in the Plur.

Acus, -ūs (f.), *a needle.* Dat. and Abl. Plur., *acubus*.

Adolescens, -entis (c.), *a youth.* Gen. Plur., *adolescentium*.

Adulter, -eri (m.), *an adulterer.* Keeps the *e* in all cases.

Ædes (f.), in the Sing. is *a temple*; in the Plur., *ædes, -ium, a house.*

Æneas, -æ (m.), *Æneas.* Voc. Sing., *Ænea*; Acc. Sing., *Æneam* or *Ænean*.

Ambages, -is (f.), *a winding.* In Sing. only Abl. Gen. Plur., *ambagum*.

Amussis, -is (f.), *a rule.* Acc. Sing., *amussim*; Abl. Sing. *amussi*.

Anchises, -æ (m.), *Anchises.* Acc., *Anchisēn*, or -am; Abl., *Anchise* or *Anchisā*; Voc. *Anchisē* or -ā, declined, see p. 177.

Animal, -is (n.), *an animal.* Nom., Voc., Acc. Plur., *animalia*; Gen. Plur., *animalium*; Abl. Sing., *animali*.

Apis, *apis* (f.), *a bee.* Also, *apes, apis.* Gen. Plur., *apium* and *apum*.

Aqua, *aquæ* (f.), *water.* (Plur.) *aquæ, medicinal springs.*

Arcus, -ūs (m.), *a bow.* Dat. and Abl. Plur., *arcubus*, like *acus*.

Arma, -orum (n.), *arms.* Has no singular.

Artus, -uum (Pl.), (m.), *limbs.* Dat. and Abl. Plur., *artubus*, like *acus*.

Arx, *arcis* (f.), *a citadel.* Gen. Plur., *arcium*.

As, *assis* (m.), *a small coin.* Gen. Plur., *assium*, like *arx*.

Aurum, *auri* (n.), *gold.* Has no Plur.

Auxilium, -i (n.), *help.* (Plur.) *auxilia, auxiliary forces.*

Avis, -is (f.), *a bird.* Abl. Sing., *avi* and *ave*.

Barbaria, -æ (f.), *barbarism.* Also barbaries, *barbariei*.

Cælicola, -æ, *a dweller in heaven.* Gen. Plur., *cælicolām*.

Cælum, *cæli* (n.), (no plural), *heaven.*

Calcar, -āris (n.), *a spur.* Nom., Voc., and Acc. Plur., *calcaria*; Gen. Plur., *calcarium*; Abl. Sing., *calcari*.

Callus, -i (m.), also *callum, -i* (n.), *hardened skin.*

Canis, -is (c.), *a dog.* Gen. Plur., *canum*.

Carbasus, -i (f.), *fine flax.* (Plur.), *carbasa* (n.), *sails.*

Carcer, -eris (m.), *a prison.* Carceres, -um, *a starting point.*

Casses, -ium (Pl.), (m.), *a snare*. Only Abl. in Sing.
 Castrum (Sing.), -i (n.), *a fort*. (Plur.) castra, -orum, *a camp*.
 Chlamys, chlamydis (f.), *a cloak*. Declined (see p. 177).
 Clavis, -is (f.), *a key*. Acc. Sing., -im or -em. Abl., -i or -e.
 Cliens, clientis (c.), *a client*. Gen. Plur., clientium and clientum.
 Cœlebs, cœlibis, *unmarried* (adj.). Abl. Sing., cœlibe.
 Commentarius (m.), also commentarium, -i (n.), *a note book*.
 Compos, compotis (adj.), *having the mastery of*. Abl. Sing., compote.
 Copia, -æ (f.), *plenty*. (Plur.) copiæ, -arum, *forces*.
 Cupressus, -i, and cupressus, -ūs (f.), *a cypress*.

(Daps), dapis (f.), *a feast*. No Nom. or Voc. Sing.
 Dea, -æ (f.), *a goddess*. Dat. and Abl. Plur., deabus.
 Delos, Deli (f.), *Delos*. Irr., declined at full length (see p. 177).
 Deses, desidis (adj.), *lazy*. Abl. Sing., deside.
 Deus, dei (m.), *a god*. Irr., declined at full length (see p. 177).
 Dies, diei or diē and dii, *a day*. Common in Sing., masc. in Plur.
 (Ditio), ditionis (f.), *a dominion*. No Nom. Sing.; no Plur.
 Domus, -ūs (f.), *a house*. Declined (see p. 177).

Echo, echus (f.), *echo*. The other cases in *o*.
 Effigies, effigiei (f.), *an image*. Has only Nom., Voc., and Acc. in Plur.
 Epitome, epitomes (f.), *an abridgment*. Declined (see p. 177).
 Eventus, -ūs (m.), eventum, -i (n.), *an occurrence*.

Faber, fabri (m.). Gen. Plur., fabrorum and fabrum.
 Facies, faciei (f.), *a face*. Has only Nom., Voc., and Acc. in Plur.
 Fas (n.), *Divine law*. Indeclinable.
 (Faux) (f.) Sing., some times Abl., fauce; Plur., fauces, faucium, etc.
 Febris, febris (f.), *fever*. Acc. Sing., febrim and febrem; Abl. Sing., febrī and febre.
 Feriæ, feriarum (f.), *holidays*. Has no Sing.
 Ficus, -i, and ficus, -ūs (f.), *a fig tree*.
 Fides, fidei (f.), *faith*. Gen. Sing., fidei, also fide in poets; Dat. Sing., fide in poets, or fidei.
 Filia, -æ (f.), *a daughter*. Dat. and Abl. Plur., filiabus.
 Filius, -i (m.), *a son*. Voc. Sing., fili; Gen. Sing., filii and filī.
 Frenum, -i (n.), *a bit*. Plur. freni (m.), frena (n.).
 (Frux), frugis (f.), *fruit*. Has no Nom.
 Grates, *thanks* (Plur.); usually only in Nom. and Acc. Abl. (*Tacitus*).

Gratia, -æ (f.), *favour*; gratiæ, -arum, *thanks*.

Gravis, -e (adj.), *heavy*. Nom., Voc., and Acc. Plur. neut., gravia;

Gen. Plur., gravium; Abl. Sing., gravi.

Gener, generi (m.), *a son-in-law*. Keeps the *e* in all cases (like puer).

Genius, genii (m.), *a genius*. Declined like filius.

Glis, gliris (m.), *a dormouse*. Gen. Plur., glirium.

Hispalis, -is (f.), *Seville*. Acc. Sing., Hispalim.

Ignis, ignis (m.), *fire*. Abl. Sing., igni and igne.

Imber, imbris (m.), *a shower*. Abl. Sing., imbri and imbre.

Impedimentum, -i (n.), *a hindrance*. Plur., impedimenta, *baggage*.

Impos, impotis (adj.), *not master of*. Abl. Sing., impote.

Instar (n.), *likeness*. Indeclinable.

Jocus, -i (m.), *a joke*. Plur., joci (m.), joca (n.).

Jugerum, -i (n.), *an acre*. 2nd declension in Sing., 3rd in Plur. Nom.,

Voc., and Acc. Plur., jugera; Gen. Plur., jugerum; Dat. and Abl.,
jugeribus.

Justitia, -æ (f.), *justice*. Has no Plural.

Juvenis, -is (m.), *a youth*. Gen. Plur., juvenum.

Lacus, -ūs (m.), *a lake*. Dat. and Abl. Plur., lacubus, like acus.

Lælius, Lælii (m.), *Lælius*. Declined like filius.

Laurus, -i (f.), *a bay tree*, and laurus, -ūs.

Liber, Liberi (m.), *Bacchus*. Keeps the *e* in all cases.

Liberi, -orum (m.), *children*. Has no Sing.

Lis, litis (f.), *a law suit*. Gen. Plur., litium.

Littera, -æ (f.), *a letter (alphabet)*; litteræ, -arum, *an epistle*.

Locus, -i (m.), *a place*; loci (m. Plur.), loca (n. Plur.).

Ludus, -i (m.), *play*; ludi, -orum, *public games*.

Luxuria, -æ (f.), *luxury*; also luxuries, luxuriei.

Mare, maris (n.), *the sea*. Abl. Sing., mari; neut. Plur., maria.

Mas, maris (m.), *a male*. Gen. Plur., marium.

Materfamilias (f.), matrisfamilie and matrisfamilias, *the mother of a family*.

Materia, -æ (f.), *timber*; and materies, -ei.

Memor, -oris (adj.), *mindful*. Abl. Sing., *memori*.

Menda, -æ (f.), and mendum, -i (n.), *a fault*.

Mensis, -is (m.), *a month*. Gen. Plur., *mensum* or *mensium*.

Messis, -is (f.), *a harvest*. Acc. Sing., *messem* or *messim*.

Mollitia, -æ, *softness*; and mollities, -ei (f.).

Mons, montis (m.), *a mountain*. Gen. Plur., *montium*.

Mus, muris (m.), *a mouse*. Gen. Plur., *murium*.

Nata, -æ (f.), *a daughter*. Dat. and Abl. Plur., *natabus*.

Navis, -is (f.), *a ship*. Acc. Sing., *navim* or *navem*.

Nefas (n.), *crime*. Indeclinable.

Nihil (n.), *nothing*. Indeclinable.

Nix, nivis (f.), *snow*. Gen. Plur., *nivium*.

Numus and nummus, -i (m.), *money*. Gen. Plur., *numorum* and *numûm*.

Opera, -æ (f.), *an exertion*; operæ, -arum (m.), *workmen*.

(Ops) opis (f.), *strength*; opes, opum (Plur.), *wealth*.

Orpheus, Orpheû, Orpheos (m.), *Orpheus*. Declined (see p. 177).

Os, ossis (n.), *a bone*. Gen. Plur., *ossium*.

Pallas, Palladis or Pallados (f.), *Minerva*. Declined (see p. 177).

Paris, Paridis or Paridos (m.), *Paris*. Declined (see p. 177).

Partus, -ûs (m.), *a birth*. Dat. and Abl. Plur., *partubus*, like *acus*.

Paterfamilias, patrifamiliæ and patristfamilias (m.), *father of a family*.

Pauper, pauperis (adj.), *poor*. Abl. Sing., *paupere*.

Pecu (-ûs) (n.), *cattle*. Dat. and Abl. Plur., *pecubus*, like *acus*.

Pelagus, -i (n.), *the sea*. Has no Plural.

Pelvis, -is (f.), *a basin*. Acc. Sing., *pelvim* and *pelvem*.

Pericles, -is and -i (m.), *Pericles*. Declined at full length (see p. 177).

Pinus, -ûs, and pinus, -i (f.), *a pine*.

Plebs, plebis, and plebes, -is, -ei (f.), *common people*.

Portus, -ûs (m.), *harbour*. Dat., Abl. Plur., *portubus* and *portibus*.

(Prex) (precis) (f.), *a prayer*. Nom. and Gen. Sing. not used.

Princeps, principis (adj.), *chief*. Abl. Sing., *principe*.

Prudens, prudentis (adj.), *prudent*. Abl. Sing., *prudenti* and *prudente*;

Nom., Voc., and Acc. Plur. (n.), *prudentia*.

Pubes and puber, puberis (adj.), *adult*.

Puer, pueri (m.), *a boy*. Keeps the *e* in all cases.

Puppis, -is (f.), *a ship*. Acc. Sing., puppim and puppem. Abl. Sing., puppi and puppe.

Quercus, -ūs (f.), *an oak*. Dat. and Abl. Plur., quercubus.

Rastrum, -i (f.), *a rake*. (Plur.) rastri, -orum (m.), rastra, -orum (n.).

(Ravis), -is (f.), *hoarseness*. Acc. Sing., ravim.

Requies, -etis (f.), *rest*. Acc. Sing., requietem and requiem. Abl. Sing., requiete and requie.

Restis, -is (f.), *a rope*. Acc., restim or restem. Abl. Sing., reste.

Rostrum, -i (n.), *a beak*. (Plur.) rostra, -orum, *a platform for speaking*.

Sappho, -us and -onis (f.), *Sappho*. Declined at full length (see p. 177).

Securis, -is (f.), *an axe*. Acc. Sing., securim and securem; Abl. Sing., securi.

Sedes, -is (f.), *a seat*. Gen. Plur., sedum and sedium.*

Series (f.), *a series*. Has only Nom., Acc., and Abl. Sing.

Sibilus, -i (m.), *a hissing*. (Plur.) sibili and sibila, sibilos and sibila.

Sitis, -is (f.), *thirst*. Acc. Sing., sitim; has no Plur.

Socer, -ēri (m.), *a father-in-law*. Keeps the *e* in all cases, like puer.

Species, -ei (f.), *an appearance*. Has only Nom., Voc., and Acc. Plur.

Specus, -ūs (m.), *a cave*. Dat. and Abl., specubus, like acus.

Spes, spei (f.), *hope*. Has only Nom., Voc., and Acc. Plur.

(Spons), Abl. sponte (f.), *of one's own accord*.

Strix, strigis (f.), *an owl*. Gen. Plur., strigium.

Strues, struis (f.), *a heap*. Gen. Plur., struum.

Suggestus, -ūs (m.), and suggestum, -i (n.), *a platform for speakers*.

Supellex, supellectilis (f.), *household utensils*. Abl., supellectili and -e.

Superstes, superstitis (adj.), *only surviving*. Abl. Sing., superstite.

Sus, suis (c.), *a swine*. Dat. plur. subus (*Lucretius*), and suibus.

Tabula, -æ (f.), *a board*; tabulæ, -arum, *writing tablets*.

Tartarus, -i (m.), *Tartarus*. (Plur.) Tartara, -orum (n.).

Tenebræ, -arum (f.), *darkness*. Has no Sing.

Terrigena, -æ (c.), *earth born*. Gen. Plur., terrigenûm.

Tiberis, -is (m.), *the Tiber*. Acc. Sing., Tiberim, Tibrim (from Tiberis); Abl. Sing., -i.

Tribus, -ūs (f.), *a tribe*. Dat. and Abl. Plur., tribubus.

Tristis, -e (adj.), *sad*. Abl. Sing., tristi.

Turris, -is (f.), *a tower*. Acc. Sing., turrim and turrem; Abl. Sing., turri and turre.

Tussis, -is (f.), *a cough*. Acc., tussim; Abl. Sing., tussi.

Vas, vasis (n.), *a vessel*. 3rd dec. in Sing., 2nd in Plur; (Plur.) vasa, vasorum.

Vates, vatis (c.), *a prophet*. Gen. Plur., vatum.

(Verber), verberis (n.), *a stripe*. Abl. Sing., verbere; only Gen. and Abl. in Sing., full Plur.

Veru, verus (n.), *a spit*. Dat. and Abl. Plur., verubus and veribus.

Vesper, vespers (3) and -eri (2) (m.), *the evening*. Acc. Sing., vesperum; keeps the *e* in all cases. Also vespera, -æ (f.).

Virus, viri (n.), *poison*. Has no Plural.

Vis, vis (f.), *strength*. Acc. Sing., vim; (Plur.) Nom., Voc., and Acc., vires, virium. Gen. and Dat. Sing., very rare.

Volucris, volucris (f.), *a bird*. Gen. Plur., volucrum.

Vulgus, -i (n.), *common people*. Has no Plural.

APPENDIX.

Ales, alitis (c.), *a bird*. Abl. Sing., alite and -e; Gen. Plur., alitum and alitum.

(Cassis, cassis) (m.), *a net, snare*. Only Abl., casse, in Sing. Full Plural.

Grus, gruis (c.), *a crane*. Nom. Sing., gruis (*Phædrus*).

Lien, lienis, and lienis, lienis (m.), *milt, spleen*.

Obex, obicis and objicis (c.), *a bolt*.

Palus, paludis (f.), *a marsh*. Gen. Plur., paludum and paludium.

Parens, parentis (c.), *a parent*. Gen. Plur., parentum and parentium.

Poema, poematis (n.), *a poem*. Dat. and Abl. Plur., poematis.

Renes, renum (m.), *kidneys*. Has no Singular.

Sanguis, sanguinis (m.), *blood*. Has no Plural.

Amnis, *a river,*

Collis, *a hill,*

Fustis, *a cudgel,*

Clunis, *a buttock,*

Finis, *a boundary,*

Postis, *a door,*

besides those mentioned and many others, have Abl. Sing. in *i* and *e*.

To express February 3rd. The Nones fell on the 5th; Add 1, and the result is 6; $6-3=3$. Therefore, February 3rd=a. d. III. Non. Feb.

To express May 13th. The Ides of May fell on the 15th; add 1 to this, and you have 16; $16-13=3$. Therefore, May 13th=a. d. III. Id. Mai.

To express in Latin the date of a year the ordinal numerals must be used; e.g. A.D. 1885=Anno post Christum natum millesimo octingentesimo octogesimo quinto.

The Kalends, Nones, and Ides of January, etc., will be expressed by Kalendis, Nonis, Idibus, Januariis, etc.; or, briefly, by Kal. Jan. : Non. Jan. : Id. Jan., etc

The day before the Kalends, Nones, and Ides of January, etc., is expressed by Pridie Kalendas, Nonas, Idus, Januarias, etc.; or, briefly, Prid. Kal., Non., Id., Jan.

In leap year February 24 (a. d. VI. Kal. Mart.) was reckoned twice; and the day was called *dies bissextus*, whence the term bissextile, as applied to leap year.*

The Latin names of the months, which are adjectives (agreeing with *mensis*), are Januarius, Februarius, Martius, Aprilis, Maius, Junius, Julius (or Quintilis), Augustus (or Sextilis), September, October, November, December.

Those in *-us* are declined like *bonus*; those in *-is* like *tristis*; those in *-er* like *acer*.

* The intercalated day was counted between a. d. VI. and a. d. VII., and called a. d. bissextum Kal. Mart.; so that a. d. VII. answers as in ordinary years to Feb. 23rd.

ROMAN MONEY.

There were two principal coins, the *As* (genitive *assis*) and the *Sestertius* (a silver coin = $2\frac{1}{2}$ *asses*), the symbol for which was HS.

The *As*, or pound of 12 ounces (*unciæ*), was thus divided :

Uncia	=	1 oz., or $\frac{1}{12}$ of the <i>As</i> .
Sextans	=	2 „ $\frac{2}{12} = \frac{1}{6}$ „
Quadrans	=	3 „ $\frac{3}{12} = \frac{1}{4}$ „
Triens	=	4 „ $\frac{4}{12} = \frac{1}{3}$ „
Quincunx	=	5 „ $\frac{5}{12}$ „
Semis	=	6 „ $\frac{6}{12} = \frac{1}{2}$ „
Septunx	=	7 „ $\frac{7}{12}$ „
Bes	=	8 „ $\frac{8}{12} = \frac{2}{3}$ „
Dodrans	=	9 „ $\frac{9}{12} = \frac{3}{4}$ „
Dextans	=	10 „ $\frac{10}{12} = \frac{5}{6}$ „
Deunx	=	11 „ $\frac{11}{12}$ „

The following terms were used in bequeathing property :

Heres ex asse.	Heir to the whole estate.
Heres ex sextante.	„ $\frac{1}{6}$ of the „
Heres ex besse.	„ $\frac{2}{3}$ „ „
Etc., etc., etc.	

Interest was reckoned monthly at the rate of so much per 100 *asses*.

Hence

Unciæ usuræ = $\frac{1}{12}$ per cent. per month = 1 per cent. per annum.
Sextantes usuræ = $\frac{1}{6}$ per cent. per month = 2 per cent. per annum.
Quadrantes usuræ = $\frac{1}{4}$ per cent. per month = 3 per cent. per annum.

Asses usuræ = 1 per cent. per month = 12 per cent. per annum.

Instead of asses usuræ we find centesimæ:

So, Binæ centesimæ	= 2	} per cent. or 24 } per cent.	} per an-
Trinæ „	= 3		
Quaternæ „	= 4		
		per month	„ 36 } per an-
			„ 48 } num.

The sestertius, or sesterce, as we have said, was a *coin*.

The sestertium was the name of a *sum* (= 1,000 sestertii), and is only used in the plural.

Sestertia, HS, joined with Cardinal or Distributive numbers, means so many thousand sesterces.

The Numeral adverbs joined with (or understanding) *sestertii* (gen. sing.), *sestertium*, or HS, denote so many 100,000 sesterces.

Thus, Tres sestertii	= 3	sesterces.
Trecenti sestertii	= 300	„
Mille sestertiûm	= 1,000	„
Duo millia sestertiûm, or duo sestertia	} = 2,000	„
Decem millia sestertiûm		= 10,000 „
Centum millia sestertiûm,	} = 100,000	„
Centena millia sestertiûm		„
Centum sestertia	} = 300,000	„
Ter centena millia sestertiûm,		„
Ter sestertiûm	} = 1,000,000	„
Decies centena millia sestertiûm,		„
Decies sestertiûm	} = 40,000,000	„
Quadringenties sestertiûm		„

NOTE.—HS. X = Sestertii decem = 10 sesterces.

HS. \bar{X} = Sestertia decem = 10,000 „

\overline{HS} . X = Sestertium decies = 1,000,000 „

PARSING.

There is but little doubt that the generality of teachers, whether at public or private schools, make use of *Parsing* too much as a means of *teaching* the Grammar of a sentence, whereas it should more properly be used simply as a test of what the pupil knows. As also dictation is often improperly used as a means of *teaching* spelling, though it is a most capital exercise and test when the pupil *has learned* to spell fairly.

Much time is wasted over Parsing. The pupil has to say everything he knows of a word, whether it is Masculine or Feminine, Singular or Plural; and of a Verb, what Conjugation, Voice, Mood, Tense, Number, Person, etc. Careful and diligent teachers boast that they do this with their pupils every day. The pupil no doubt gets up the required form by rote, but half the time does not understand what he is about; and if asked what Gender and why, cannot answer without thinking.

The simplest form of *Parsing* is the best, as not wearying either to the teacher or the pupil. Below is an example:

Maturus fructus dulcem saporem habet.

Maturus fructus ripe fruit *habet* has *dulcem saporem* a sweet taste.

Maturus. Nominative Case, to agree with its substantive *fructus*.
Fructus. Nominative Case to the verb *habet*.
Dulcem. Accusative Case, to agree with its substantive *saporem*.
Saporem. Accusative Case governed by the verb *habet*.
Habet. Third Person Singular, to agree with its Nominative Case *fructus*.

This is all that is required to enable a pupil to understand the construction of the sentence.

It is certainly *most important* that much more than this should be known; but, according to the teaching of this little book, the pupil would know it. He would know as well as his teacher that *maturus* was an Adjective, Masculine Gender and Singular Number, and declined like *bonus*, or certainly he *would* not and *could* not be doing exercises.

And so with *dulcem*. If he did not know that *dulcem* was an Adjective of two terminations, declined like *tristis*, and that *dul-*

cem in itself was Masculine or Feminine, but Masculine in this sentence because it has to agree with *saporem*, he certainly would have to shut his Exercise book and take to his Grammar again.

There must be added a word or two about this Parsing for those who wish to learn Latin by themselves, that they may teach it to others.

Matūrus is the Nominative Case, simply and for no other reason than that it has to agree with *fructus*, which is Nominative. Being an Adjective, it has nothing to do with the Verb, or with anything but a Substantive.

Fructus is the Nominative Case to the verb *habet*. *Habet* standing in the sentence must have some Nominative, either expressed or understood; as *fructus* is a Nominative, then *fructus* must be taken.

Dulcem is the Accusative Case—not governed by the Verb, for being an Adjective it has nothing to do with anything but a Substantive; but it is the Accusative Case to agree with *saporem*, because *saporem* is the Accusative.

Saporem is the Accusative Case governed by the verb *habet*. *Habet* must take some Accusative Case after it—what is it but *saporem*?

Habet is the Third Person Singular, to agree with its Nominative Case *fructus* (or *maturus fructus*). *Habet* is the Singular Number because *fructus* is, and Third Person because every thing and every person but “you” or “I,” “you” or “we” is the Third Person.

But were there any idea that the pupil did not know *every particular* about each word, then each word should be taken, and he should be questioned upon it in every way.

Saporem.—What Case? Why? What Declension? How do you know the Declension? What Gender? Why?

Habet.—What Part of Speech? What Voice—Mood—Tense? What Person? Why? What Conjugation? How do you know that it is the Second Conjugation?

But then a pupil taught as by this book *would* know this, and there would be no need to ask these questions once a month.

ORDER OF LATIN WORDS.

- I. In short Latin sentences the *Nominative* will come first.
Pisces extra aquam cito expirant.
Fish quickly expire out of the water.
- II. As a general rule, the *Verb* comes last.
Milites trans hostium fertiles agros ibant.
The soldiers were going across the fertile fields of the enemy.
- III. The word governed is generally placed before the word that governs it; as,
Pomum habet, not Habet pomum.
Urbis portas clausit, not Portas urbis clausit.
- IV. The *Possessive Pronoun* will usually come after the word it agrees with; as,
Puer librum suum amisit, not Puer suum librum amisit.
- V. The *Adjective* mostly comes after the Substantive with which it agrees; as,
Poeta filiam bonam habet.
- VI. This *Adjective* may however be separated from its Substantive by a Genitive (with its Adjective) depending on that Substantive, in which case it precedes the Genitive; as,
Puer bonam poetæ filiam videt;
as also
Puer bonam sapientis poetæ filiam videt.
The boy sees the good daughter of the wise poet.
- VII. The *Adverb* will come generally next before the word to which it belongs; as,
Pisces extra aquam cito expirant.

VIII. The *Preposition*, as a general rule, *must* come IMMEDIATELY before the word to which it belongs; as in the last sentence,

Pisces extra aquam cito expirant.

IX. It may however (see p. 112)

(a) Go before the Adjective that agrees with the Substantive; as, *Milites trans fertiles agros ibant.* Or

(b) Before a Genitive depending on that word; as, *Milites trans hostium fertiles agros ibant.*

X. *Conjunctions* which join words together must of necessity come between such words; as, *Mare et terra.*

If *que* is used instead of *et*, it will be affixed to the word to which it belongs; as, *Mare terramque videt.*

If the conjunction join sentences together, it will come between the sentences; as, *Multa vidit et plura audivit.*

XI. *Autem, enim, vero, quidem, quoque, igitur*, may not stand first in the sentence; but *namque sed, equidem, ergo, itaque, tamen*, may stand first.

XII. The Interjection will be the first word in the sentence.

There is also another way of telling the proper order for Latin words; viz. according to emphasis. *The word which is of first importance is first in the arrangement of words.* Hence the emphatic words precede others. The following will at least explain what is meant by the above rule:

1. *Will you go into the town to-morrow?*
Visne cras in oppidum ire?
2. *Will you go into the town to-morrow?*
Tune in oppidum cras ire vis?
3. *Will you go into the town to-morrow?*
Crasne in oppidum ire vis?

RULES OF SYNTAX.

Page 72.

FOUR GENERAL RULES.

LATIN.	ENGLISH.
A.	A.
Verbum Finitum cum nominativo Subjecti congruit numero et persona. 88. I.	A Verb Finite agrees with the nominative of its Subject in Number and Person. 88. I.
B.	B.
Adjectivum genere, numero, et casu congruit cum eo cui attribuitur. 89. II.	An Adjective agrees in Gender, Number, and Case with that to which it is in attribution. 89. II.
C.	C.
Substantivum casu congruit cum eo cui apponitur. 90. III.	A Substantive agrees in case with that to which it is in apposition. 90. III.
D.	D.
Relativum cum Antecedente congruit, genere, numero, et persona; sed casu spectat suam clausulam. 91. IV.	A Relative agrees with its Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person; but in Case belongs to its own clause. 91. IV.

The Letter or figure at the top of each Rule refers to Syntax, Part II.
The figures *after* each Rule refer to the Public School Latin Primer.

THE VERB AND ITS NOMINATIVE OR SUBJECT.

LATIN.

I.

Finiti Verbi Subjectum Nominativus est. 93. 1.

V.

Cum Subjecto composito pluralia congruunt. 92.

VI.

In diversitate personarum Verba congruunt cum Priore Persona. 92. 1.

VII.

Infinitivum stat substantive, pro nominativo vel Accusativo. 140. I. 1.

VIII.

Clausulæ pro Substantivis ponuntur. 156 (3).

ENGLISH.

I.

The Subject of a Finite Verb is a Nominative. 93. 1.

V.

With a composite Subject Plural words agree. 92.

VI.

If the Persons differ, Verbs agree with the Prior Person. 92. 1.

VII.

The Infinitive stands substantively for nominative or Accusative. 140. I. 1.

VIII.

Clauses are put for Substantives. 156 (3).

THE VERB AND ITS ACCUSATIVE OR OBJECT.

Accusativus est Casu Proprioris Objecti. Neenon limitandi vim habet.

I.

Verba Transitiva regunt Accusativum Objecti.

III.

Intransitiva capiunt Accusativum vi cognata. 97.

The Accusative is the Case of the nearer Object. It has also the power of limiting.

I.

Transitive Verbs govern an Accusative of the Object.

III.

Intransitive Verbs take an Accusative of kindred meaning. 97.

THE NOMINATIVE AFTER THE VERB.

Verba Copulativa, sive Finita sive Infinitiva, complementum plerumque cum Subjecto congruens habent. 94.

Copulative Verbs, whether Finite or Infinitive, generally have a complement agreeing with the Subject. 94.

This applies also to the Accusative.

THE GENITIVE AFTER THE VERB.

Page 79.

I.

Genitivus ita stat ut suppleri possit,
 indoles munus
 indicium officium 127. b.

II.

Interest, refert, Genitivum admittunt. 129. III.

Eadem pro Genitivis Pronominum usurpant hos casus, *meā, tuā, suā, nostrā, vestrā*, cum *rē* congruentes. 129. III. a.

III.

Genitivus adjungitur Verbis et Adjectivis quibus significatur—

Potentia et impotentia.
Criminatio, innocentia.
Damnatio, absolutio.
Memoria et oblivio.

133. II.

IV.

Ex Adjectivis et Verbis *abundandi vel egendi, ditandi vel privandi*, pleraque Ablativum capiunt, multa etiam Genitivum. 119. IX. b.

V.

Misereor, miseresco, Genitivum capiunt; *miseror, commiseror* Accusativum. 135. IV.

VI.

Memini, reminiscor, recordor, obliviscor, Genitivum vel Accusativum admittunt. 133. II. a.

VII.

Piget, pudet, pœnitet, tædet, atque *miseret*, Impersonalia, Genitivum capiunt cum Accusativo. 134. III.

I.

A Genitive so stands that *nature, token, function, duty*, can be supplied. 127. b.

II.

Interest (*it imports*), refert (*it concerns*) admit a Genitive. 129. III.

The same verbs, instead of the Genitives of Pronouns, use these cases, *meā, tuā, suā, nostrā, vestrā*, agreeing with *rē*. 129. III. a.

III.

A Genitive is joined to Verbs and Adjectives which signify—

Power and impotence.
Inculpation, innocence.
Condemnation, acquittal.
Memory and forgetfulness.

133. II.

IV.

Most Adjectives and Verbs of *abounding or wanting, enriching or depriving*, take an Ablative; many also a Genitive. 119. IX. b.

V.

Misereor, miseresco (*I pity*), take a Genitive; *miseror, commiseror* (*I compassionate*), an Accusative. 135. IV.

VI.

Memini, reminiscor, recordor (*I remember*), *obliviscor* (*I forget*) admit Genitive or Accusative. 133. II. a.

VII.

Piget (*it irks*), *pudet* (*it shames*), *pœnitet* (*it repents*), *tædet* (*it disgusts*), and *miseret* (*it moves pity*), Impersonal Verbs, take a Genitive with an Accusative. 134. III.

THE DATIVE AFTER THE VERB.

Pages 80, 81.

LATIN.

Dativus est casus Recipientis seu Remotioris Objecti. 104.

I.

Trajectiva, quæ sensum trajiciunt ad Remotius objectum, sunt multa Adjectiva, Adverbia, et Verba, rarius Substantiva, quibus indicatur :

Propinquitas et contraria.
Demonstratio et contraria.
Gratificatio et contraria.
Dominatio et contraria.

105. I.

II.

Inter Trajectiva sunt multa Verba composita cum Particulis, quales sunt :

*Bene, male, satis, re,
Ad, ante, con, in, inter, de,
ob, sub, super, post, et præ.*

106. a.

III.

Sum, cum compositis, præter possum, capit Dativum. 107. II. b.

IV.

Est, sunt, cum Dativo, habere sæpe significant. 107. II. c.

V.

Dativus Propositi pro complemento ponitur, adjuncto sæpe Dativo Recipientis. 108. III.

ENGLISH.

The Dative is the case of the Recipient or Remoter object. 104.

I.

Words which carry their meaning over to a Remoter Object are called Trajective, and include many Adjectives, Adverbs, and Verbs, more rarely Substantives, by which is implied—

Nearness and its contraries.
Demonstration and its contraries.
Gratification and its contraries.
Dominion and its contraries.

105. I.

II.

Among Trajective words are many Verbs compounded with Particles, such as :

*bene, well.
male, ill.
satis, enough.*

*re, ad, ante, con, in, inter, de, ob,
sub, super, post, et præ.*

106. a.

III.

Sum, with its compounds, except possum, takes a Dative. 107. II. b.

IV.

Est, sunt, with a Dative, often imply having. 107. II. c.

V.

A Dative of the Purpose is used as a complement, a Dative of the Recipient being often added. 108. III.

THE ABLATIVE AFTER THE VERB.

Page 81.

LATIN.	ENGLISH.
I.	I.
Ablativum regunt :	These words govern an Ablative :
(1) Verba	(1) The Verbs :
<i>fungor, fruor,</i> <i>utor, vescor,</i> <i>potior, dignor.</i>	<i>Fungor, to perform.</i> <i>Fruor, to enjoy.</i> <i>Utor, to use.</i> <i>Vescor, to eat.</i> <i>Potior, get possession of.</i> <i>Dignor, deem worthy.</i>
* (2) Adjectiva	(2) The Adjectives :
<i>dignus, indignus,</i> <i>contentus, fretus,</i> <i>præditus.</i>	<i>Dignus, worthy.</i> <i>Indignus, unworthy.</i> <i>Contentus, content.</i> <i>Fretus, relying.</i> <i>Præditus, endowed.</i>
* (3) Substantiva, <i>opus, usus.</i>	(3) The Substantives :
119. IX. a.	<i>Opus, need.</i> <i>Usus, use.</i>
119. IX. a.	
II.	II.
Ex Adjectivis et Verbis abundandi vel egendi, ditandi vel privandi, pleraque Ablativum capiunt, multa etiam Genitivum. 119. b.	Most Adjectives and Verbs of <i>abounding or wanting, enriching or depriving</i> , take an Ablative; many also a Genitive. 119. b.
III.	III.
Præpositiones etiam compositæ regunt Ablativum, præsertim <i>ab, de, ex.</i> 122. XII. a.	Prepositions, even when compounded, govern an Ablative, especially <i>ab, de, ex.</i> 122. XII. a.

* It has been thought convenient to place the Adjectives and the Substantives here to make the rule complete.

VERBS WHICH TAKE TWO CASES.

Page 82.

ACCUSATIVE AND GENITIVE.

LATIN.	ENGLISH.
I.	I.
Genitivus adjungitur Verbis et Adjectivis quibus significatur :	A Genitive is joined to Verbs and Adjectives which signify :
<i>Potentia et impotentia.</i>	<i>Power and impotence.</i>
<i>Criminatio, innocentia.</i>	<i>Inculpation, innocence.</i>
<i>Damnatio, absolutio.</i>	<i>Condemnation, acquittal.</i>
<i>Memoria et oblivia.</i>	<i>Memory and forgetfulness.</i>
133. II.	133. II.
II.	II.
<i>Piget, pudet, pœnitent, tædet,</i> atque <i>miseret</i> , Impersonalia, Geni- tivum capiunt cum Accusativo.	<i>Piget (it irks), pudet (it shames),</i> <i>pœnitent (it repents), tædet (it dis-</i> <i>gusts), miseret (it moves pity),</i> Im- personal verbs, take a Genitive with an Accusative.—134. III.
134. III.	

The above do not necessarily always take two cases.

ACCUSATIVE AND DATIVE.

Trajectiva quæ sensum trajiciunt ad Remotius Objectum, sunt multa Adjectiva, Adverbia, et verba, rarius Substantiva, quibus indicatur :	Words which carry their mean- ing over to a Remote Object are called Trajective, and include many Adjectives, Adverbs, and Verbs, more rarely Substantives, by which is implied :
<i>Propinquitas et contraria.</i>	<i>Nearness and its contraries.</i>
<i>Demonstratio et contraria.</i>	<i>Demonstration and its contraries.</i>
<i>Gratificatio et contraria.</i>	<i>Gratification and its contraries.</i>
<i>Dominatio et contraria.</i>	<i>Dominion and its contraries.</i>
105. I.	105. I.

The above do not necessarily always take two cases.

VERBS WHICH TAKE EITHER OF TWO CASES.

Page 83.

GENITIVE OR ACCUSATIVE.

LATIN.

Memini, reminiscor, recordor,
Genitivum vel Accusativum admit-
tunt. 133. II. a.

ENGLISH.

Memini, reminiscor, recordor (*I remember*), *obliscor* (*I forget*), ad-
mit Genitive or Accusative. 133.
II. a.

GENITIVE OR ABLATIVE.

Ex Adjectivis et Verbis *abun-*
dandi vel egendi, ditandi vel pri-
vandi, pleraque Ablative capiunt,
multa etiam Genitivum. 119. IX. b.

Most Adjectives and Verbs of
abounding or wanting, enriching
or depriving, take an Ablative;
many also a Genitive. 119. IX. b.

VERBS WHICH TAKE A DOUBLE CASE.

Page 83.

TWO ACCUSATIVES—PERSON AND THING.

I.

Verba quædam, *rogandi præser-*
tim et docendi, binos admittunt
Accusativos, alterum Rei, alterum
Personæ.—98.

I.

Some Verbs, especially those of
asking and *teaching*, admit two
Accusatives, one of the thing, the
other of the Person.—98.

TWO ACCUSATIVES—OBJECT AND COMPLEMENT.

I.

Verba quædam *faciendi, vocandi,*
putandi, similia, binos habent
Accusativos, alterum Objecti, al-
terum Obliqui Complementi.—99.

I.

* Certain Verbs, of *making*,
calling, thinking, and the like,
have two Accusatives, one of the
Object, the other of the Oblique
Complement.—99.

TWO DATIVES—SUM WITH OTHER WORDS.

I.

Dativus Propositi pro Comple-
mento ponitur, adjuncto sæpe
Dativo Recipientis.—108. III.

I.

A Dative of the Purpose is used as
a Complement, a Dative of the Re-
cipient being often added. 108. III.

* These are called Factitive Verbs.

ADJECTIVES AND THEIR CASES.

Pages 84, 85.

GENITIVE AFTER THE ADJECTIVE.

LATIN.

I.

Genitivus Rei Demensæ Vocabula Quantitatis et Neutra Adjectiva comitatur.—131. B.

II.

Genitivus objective jungitur Substantivis, Adjectivis, aut Participiis, quibus transitiva quædam vis est, præsertim si significant :

Peritiam, curam, desiderium.

Vel quidquid erit his contrarium.

132. I.

Genitivus adjungitur Verbis et Adjectivis quibus significantur :

Potentia et impotentia.

Criminatio, innocentia.

Damnatio, absolutio.

Memoria et oblivio. 133. II.

ENGLISH.

A Genitive of the Thing Measured is joined to Words of Quantity and Neuter Adjectives.—131. B.

II.

A Genitive is joined objectively to Substantives, Adjectives, or Participles if they signify *skill, care, desire*, or whatever is contrary to these.—132. I.

A Genitive is joined to Verbs and Adjectives which signify :

Power and impotence.

Inculpation, innocence.

Condemnation, acquittal.

Memory and forgetfulness. 133. II.

DATIVE AFTER THE ADJECTIVE.

Trajectiva capiunt Dativum, quum significatur :

(1) Propinquitas; (2) Demonstratio; (3) Gratificatio; (4) Dominatio; et contraria. 106.

Trajective Words take a Dative when the meanings implied are :

(1) Nearness; (2) Demonstration; (3) Gratification; (4) Dominion; and their contraries. 106.

THE ABLATIVE AFTER THE ADJECTIVE.

I.

Ablativum regunt :

Adjectiva *dignus, indignus, contentus, fretus, præditus.*

119. IX. a. 2.

II.

Ex Adjectivis et Verbis *abundandi vel egendi, ditandi vel privandi*, pleraque Ablativum capiunt, multa etiam Genitivum.—119. b.

I.

These words govern an Ablative : The Adjectives *dignus* (*worthy*), *indignus* (*unworthy*), *contentus* (*content*), *fretus* (*relying*), *præditus* (*endued*).—119. IX. a. 2.

II.

Most Adjectives and Verbs of *abounding or wanting, enriching or depriving*, take an Ablative; many also a Genitive.—119. b.

Also the Substantives *opus* and *usus* take an Ablative. 119. IX. a. 3.

DIFFERENT USES OF CASES.

Page 86.

*** These "different uses of Cases" are not intended to include the *Case after the Verb or Adjective*, which has been already given.

NOMINATIVE.

LATIN.	ENGLISH.
<p>I.</p> <p>Finiti Verbi Subjectum Nominativus est.—93. 1.</p>	<p>I.</p> <p>The Subject of a Finite Verb is a Nominative.—93. 1.</p>
<p>II.</p> <p>Substantivum casu congruit cum eo cui apponitur.—90.</p>	<p>II.</p> <p>A Substantive agrees in case with that to which it is Apposition. 90.</p>
<p>III.</p> <p>Nominativus et Accusativus in exclamando usurpantur vel sine Interjectione vel cum Interjectione. 138.</p>	<p>III.</p> <p>The Nominative and the Accusative are used in Exclamations either without an Interjection or with an Interjection.—138.</p>
<p>IV.</p> <p>Quam cum Nominativo. 124. XIV. 1.</p>	<p>IV.</p> <p>Quam with Nominative. 124. XIV. 1.</p>

VOCATIVE.

<p>Vocativus extra sententiam stat vel sine Interjectione vel cum Interjectione.—137.</p>	<p>The Vocative stands out of the sentence either without an Interjection or with an Interjection. 137.</p>
---	---

ACCUSATIVE.

Pages 86, 87.

LATIN.

I.

Infinitivi Subjectum in Accusativo ponitur.—93. 2.

II.

Substantivum casu congruit cum eo cui apponitur.—90. III.

III.

Accusativus Respectus adjungitur Verbis et Adjectivis, præsertim apud poetas.—100.

IV.

Nominativus et Accusativus in Exclamando usurpantur vel sine Interjectione vel cum Interjectione. 138.

V.

Duratio Temporis in Accusativo ponitur.—102. 1.

VI.

Mensura Spatii in Accusativo ponitur.—102. 2.

VII.

Accusativum regunt multæ Præpositiones.—103.

VIII.

Locus, *quo* itur, in Accusativo ponitur, idque sine Præpositione, si vel oppidi nomen est, vel *domus*, *rus*.—101.

IX.

Quam cum Accusativo.
124. XIV. 2.

ENGLISH.

I.

The Subject of an Infinitive is put in the Accusative.—93. 2.

II.

A Substantive agrees in case with that to which it is in Apposition.—90. III.

III.

The Accusative of Respect is joined to Verbs and Adjectives, especially in poetry.—100.

IV.

The Nominative and the Accusative are used in Exclamations either without an Interjection or with an Interjection.—138.

V.

The Duration of Time is put in the Accusative.—102. 1.

VI.

The Measure of Space is put in the Accusative.—102. 2.

VII.

Many Prepositions govern an Accusative Case.—103.

VIII.

The place, whither one goes, is put in the Accusative; and without a Preposition, if it is either the name of a town, or *domus* (*home*), *rus* (*country*).—101.

IX.

Quam with the Accusative.
124. 2.

GENITIVE.

Page 87.

LATIN.	ENGLISH.
I. Genitivus Auctoris et Possessoris. 127. I.	I. Genitive of the Author and Possessor.—127. I.
II. Substantivum casu, etc.	II. A Substantive agrees in case etc.—90 III.
III. Genitivus qualitatis, cum epitheto.—128. II.	III. Genitive of quality with epithet. 128. II.
IV. Notentur elliptici Genitivi: <i>parvi minoris minimi magni pluris plurimi tanti quanti maximi</i> quibus supple pretii. 128. II. a.	IV. The elliptic Genitives may be remarked: <i>Parvi, of small worth; minoris, of less value; minimi, of very little worth. Magni, of great price; pluris, of more value; plurimi, of high value. Tanti, of so great price; quanti, of what price; maximi, of very great price. To which supply pretii.</i> 128. II. a.

DATIVE.

Page 87.

I. Substantivum casu, etc.	I. A Substantive agrees in case, etc.
II. Ita Dativus ponitur cum <i>hei!</i> <i>væ!</i> —139.	II. So the Dative is put with <i>hei</i> , (<i>alas!</i>) <i>væ</i> (<i>woe!</i>)—139.

ABLATIVE.

Page 88.

I. Substantivum casu, etc.	I. A Substantive agrees in case, etc.
II. Ablativus Rei Comparatæ: (1) Pro <i>quam</i> cum Nominativo. (2) Pro <i>quam</i> cum Accusativo. 124. XIV.	II. Ablative of the Thing Compared: (1) For <i>quam</i> with Nom. (2) For <i>quam</i> with Acc. 124. XIV.
III. Multæ Præpositiones Ablativum regunt.—122. XII. (See list.)	III. Many Prepositions govern an Ablative.—122. XII. (See list.)
IV. Ablativus Agentis expetit Præpositionem <i>a, ab.</i> —122. XII. b.	IV. The Ablative of the Agent takes the Preposition <i>a, ab.</i> 122. XII. b.

LATIN.

V.

Ablativus est Casus rerum quæ circumstant et adverbiali more limitant actionem. Definit etiam Tempus et Locum.—110.

V. Ablativus Causæ.

VI. Ablativus Instrumenti.

VII. Ablativus Modi.

VIII. Ablativus Conditionis.

IX. Ablativus Qualitatis, cum Epitheto.

X. Ablativus Respectus.

XI. Ablativus Pretii.

XII. Ablativus Mensuræ.

XIII. Ablativus Materię.

111-119.

XIV.

Ablativus Temporis respondet, si rogatur, *Quando? Intra quantum tempus? Quanto tempore ante vel post?*—120. X.

XV.

Oppidorum nomina singularia ex Declinatione prima et secunda locum stationis definiunt per casus in æ, i.—121. XII. a.

XVI.

Ablativus oppidi Præpositione caret, cum rogatur *Unde?*

Ita domo, rure.

121. XI. C.

XVII.

Ablativus Loci ponitur sine Præpositione, cum rogatur, *qua via?*—121. XI. A.

XVIII.

Substantivum cum Participio coalescit in Ablativo, qui vocatur Absolutus.—125. XV.

ENGLISH.

V.

The Ablative is the Case of circumstances which attend action, and limit it adverbially. It defines also time and space.—110.

V. Ablative of Cause.

VI. Ablative of the Instrument.

VII. Ablative of Manner.

VIII. Ablative of Condition.

IX. Ablative of Quality with Epithet.

X. Ablative of Respect.

XI. Ablative of Price.

XII. Ablative of Measure.

XIII. Ablative of Matter.

111-119.

XIV.

The Ablative of Time answers the questions, *When? Within what time? How long before or after?*—120. X.

XV.

Singular names of towns of the first and second Declension define the place of station by cases in æ, i.—121. XII. a.

XVI.

The Ablative of a town is without a Preposition, when the question is *Whence?*

So domo (from home).

rure (from the country).

121. XI. C.

XVII.

The Ablative of Place is put without a Preposition when the question is *By what road?*

121. XI. A.

XVIII.

A Substantive combines with a Participle in the Ablative which is called Absolute.—125. XV.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Page 94.

LATIN.	ENGLISH.
I.	I.
Infinitivi Casus sunt Gerundia et Supina. 141. II.	Gerunds and Supines are the Cases of the Infinitive. 141. II.
II.	II.
Infinitivum, cum Gerundio, Participiis, et Supino in <i>um</i> , eosdem casus regit ac Verbum Finitum. 142. III.	The Infinitive, with Gerund, Participles, and Supine in <i>um</i> , governs the same Cases as the Verb Finite. 142. III.
III.	III.
Infinitivum stat — substantive, pro Nominativo vel Accusativo. 140. I. (1).	The Infinitive stands—substantively, for Nominative or Accusative. 140. I. (1).
IV.	IV.
Infinitivum stat — oblique, cum Accusativo Subjecti. 140. I. (3).	The Infinitive stands—obliquely, with Accusative of the Subject. 140. I. (3).
V.	V.
Infinitivum stat — prædicative, in narrando, pro Verbo Finito. 140. I. (2).	The Infinitive stands—Predicatively, in narration, for a Finite Verb. 140. I. (2).
VI.	VI.
Infinitivum stat — prolata constructione Verbi vel Adjectivi. 140. I. (4).	The Infinitive stands—carrying on the construction of Verb or Adjective. 140. I. (4).

GERUNDS.

Page 95.

LATIN.	ENGLISH.
III.	III.
Accusativus Gerundii Præpositionibus adjungitur. 141. II. (1).	The Accusative of the Gerund is joined to Prepositions. 141. II. (1).
IV.	IV.
Genitivus Gerundii Substantivis et Adjectivis additur. 141. II. (2).	The Genitive of the Gerund is joined to Substantives and Adjectives. 141. II. (2).
V.	V.
Dativus Gerundii Nominibus et Verbis additur. 141. II. (3).	The Dative of the Gerund is joined to Nouns and Verbs. 141. II. (3).
VI.	VI.
Ablativus Gerundii causæ vel modi est aut Præpositioni jungitur. 141. II. (4).	The Ablative of the Gerund is of cause or manner, or is joined to a Preposition. 141. II. (4).

SUPINES.

II.	II.
Supinum in <i>um</i> Accusativus est post Verba motus. 141. II. (5).	The Supine in <i>um</i> is an Accusative after Verbs of motion. 141. II. (5).
<i>Iri</i> cum Supino efficit Infinitivum futuri Passivi. 141. II. (5). <i>a</i> .	<i>Iri</i> with the Supine forms the Infinitive of the Future Passive. 141. II. (5). <i>a</i> .
III.	III.
Supinum in <i>u</i> pro Ablativo Respectus est. 141. II. (6).	The Supine in <i>u</i> is for an Ablative of respect. 141. II. (6).

RULES NOT ARRANGED IN THEIR PROPER ORDER.

GERUNDIVE ATTRACTION.

I.

In Gerundiis Transitivity usitatio est Attractio Gerundiva; cujus constructionis regula est hæc:

Trahitur Objectum in Gerundivum casum, Gerundivum in numerum et genus Objecti. 143.

I.

In Transitive Gerunds the Gerundive Attraction is more usual; the rule for which construction is the following:

The Object is attracted to the case of the Gerundive, the Gerundive to the Number and Gender of the Object. 143.

PARTITIVE GENITIVE.

Genitivus Rei Distributæ Partitivis adjungitur, quæ, quantum licet, Genitivi sumunt genus. 130. IV.

A Genitive of the Thing Distributed is joined to Partitive words, which, as far as may be, take the Gender of the Genitive. 130. IV.

ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION.

Ablativus Separationis et Originis etiam sine Præpositione Verbis et Participiis adjungitur. 123. XIII.

The Ablative of Separation and Origin is joined also with a Preposition to Verbs and Participles. 123. XIII.

THE END.

Price 2s. 6d.

By the Same Author.

In the Press.

EASY EXERCISES FOR BEGINNERS,

AS A

COMPANION VOLUME

TO

NEW EASY LATIN PRIMER.

BY THE SAME AUTHOR.

Ninth Edition. 12mo. Price 1s. 6d. Cloth.

A SHORT AND EASY LATIN BOOK.

Fourth Edition. 12mo. Price 3s. 6d. Cloth.

A FIRST EASY LATIN READING BOOK.

Third Edition. 12mo. Price 3s. 6d. Cloth.

A SECOND EASY LATIN READING BOOK.

Fifth Edition. 12mo. Price 2s. 6d. Cloth.

A SHORT AND EASY GREEK BOOK.

Second Edition. 12mo. Price 5s. Cloth.

A FIRST EASY GREEK READING BOOK.

12mo. Price 5s. Cloth.

A SECOND EASY GREEK READING BOOK.

Third Edition. 12mo. Price 1s. 6d. Cloth.

FIRST GREEK READER FOR USE AT ETON.

Drawn up at the request of the Lower Master of Eton College, and now in use at Eton, Harrow, Merchant Taylors', etc.

12mo. Price 2s.

FIRST BOOK OF HOMER'S ILIAD.

In graduated lessons, with full notes and vocabularies.

Just Published. 12mo. Price 2s. 6d. Cloth.

SELECTIONS FROM THE LATIN AUTHORS.

PROSE AND VERSE.

In Separate Parts. Price 1s. 6d.

SWAN SONNENSCHNEIN, LE BAS & LOWREY, PATERNOSTER SQUARE.

"FEW living classical scholars have done so much or nearly so much as Mr. FOWLE has done to smooth the way of the classical scholar by a series of elementary works, which for *accuracy in detail* and *perfection of method*, as well as *practical utility*, are, as a whole, unsurpassed by similar works in this country. The present volume ('Selections from the Best Latin Authors') was commenced years ago, and the delay ought to be forgiven on account of the excellence of the work now that it is completed. Before pointing out in detail the excellences of this most useful and charming book we venture to express our regret that its value is somewhat lessened in our opinion by the want of order which pervades it. The divisions made are simply two, prose and poetry. The prose begins with Eutropius and ends with Tacitus, and the poetry begins with Catullus and ends with Martial. At the end of the prose selections, as well as at the end of the poetry selections, the editors give their 'Helps for Construing,' which are helps in reality as well as in name. Their tone is scholarly and thorough, and no real difficulty, either in the text of the author or in his allusions, is shirked. We can scarcely conceive a work more capable of introducing a student to the profitable reading and study of the Latin authors' prose and verse than this admirable and scholarly work of Messrs. FOWLE and WHITAKER. We may add that it contains a short but the best summary of Latin writers we have seen anywhere."—*School Board Chronicle*.

By the Same Author.

I.

SIMPLE SENTENCES.

FIRST SERIES.

For translation into Latin and English.

Price 6d.; free by post 7d.

II.

SIMPLE SENTENCES.

SECOND SERIES.

For Translation into English.

Price 1s.; free by post 1s. 2d.

III.

**A SHORT ACCOUNT OF SOME OF THE GODS
AND HEROES OF ANTIQUITY.**

For schools and families. 68 pages.

Price 1s.; free by post 1s. 2d.

IV.

GEOGRAPHY MANUALS.

4d. each. 16 pages.

1. Introductory

PART I.

3. Water

PART III.

2. Land

PART II.

4. England & Wales

PART IV.

SWAN SONNENSCHN, LE BAS & LOWREY, PATERNOSTER SQUARE.

THE SATURDAY REVIEW

March 27th, 1875.

SOME STEPPING-STONES TO SCHOLARSHIP.*

"In the interest of both parents and pupils, we think it right to draw attention to two or three succinct and well-considered aids to the attainment of classical knowledge, in the way of grammar, composition, and collateral matters, which now lie on our table.

"Of these we place in the first rank two volumes differing in grade and scope, yet of the same practical character, excellently fitted, the one for grounding the merest tyro, the other for giving him, when grounded, an insight into the principles and philosophy of the grammar he has laid in by rote. The first is *A Short and Easy Greek Book*, by Mr. EDMUND FOWLE; the other an annotated Greek Accidence, by Mr. Evelyn Abbott, now a tutor, we believe, at Balliol; and it has seldom been our fortune to light upon Greek grammars in which economy and retrenchment of space went so thoroughly along with lucidity and solidity of information. Mr. FOWLE's book, indeed, combining grammar, exercises, and vocabulary in the space of one hundred and forty pages, distinctly aims at not only being, but also (which is a harder task, though it may appear paradoxical to say so) at seeming to the learner's eye as easy as possible. To this end each subject has been confined to one, or at most two, pages, and a vast amount of thought and pains has been bestowed upon such arrangements of declensions, division of a declension, tenses, and tables of verbs as obviate wearisome repetition, and establish a sequence readily appreciable by the learner. A further recommendation is that Mr. FOWLE's book runs in the lines of Wordsworth's Greek Grammar, and, in a less degree, in those of Mr. St. John Parry's, one or other of which is in use at most of our larger schools. And, though the nature of the *Short and Easy Greek Book* peremptorily excludes philological and philosophical explanations, which the pupils for whom it is designed would be certain to ignore, it is remarkable how seldom we have been able to trace the slightest omission of essential matter, and how often an impression is produced that the author has weighed with nicety the claims of this or that detail to be included as of vital elementary importance. . . . Yet Mr. Abbott's aim and object is also simplification. . . . When we come to the declensions of substantives, both writers are found practically limiting these to three, with a division of a third into five classes, and Mr. FOWLE has laudably simplified the intricacies of the vocative singular and dative plural of this last by a few simple rules. . . .

"In a note to his compendious account of the comparison of adjectives, Mr. FOWLE makes a reservation that 'this formation of comparatives and superlatives is only given for the sake of learning the language, and that it is not to be supposed that it represents the original growth of the words'; and so elsewhere he distinguishes between the easy way for beginners and the more philosophical way, as regards forming the tenses. . . . We may add that a great enhancement of the usefulness of Mr. FOWLE's manual is that it contains a series of simple and progressive exercises upon the steps of grammar as the pupil masters them, thus superseding the necessity of a 'Delectus,' and insuring the pupil's safe footing as he goes forward. Similar praise may be bestowed on his *Short and Easy Latin Book* and his two graduated Latin Readers, leading the pupil up to selected passages of Cæsar, Ovid, and Virgil. His constant attention to the abridgment of labour, and the acquirement of aptness in translation by progressive vocabularies and pertinent footnotes, shows a clear sense of his mission as an instructor," etc., etc., etc.

* *A Short and Easy Greek Book*. By Rev. Edmund Fowle. Longmans. 1874.

The Elements of the Greek Accidence, with Philological Notes. By Evelyn Abbott, M.A., of Balliol College, Oxford. Rivingtons. 1874.

A Short and Easy Latin Book. Fourth Edition. 1873. *A First Easy Latin Reading Book*. Second Edition. 1874. *A Second Easy Latin Reading Book*. 1873. By Rev. Edmund Fowle. Longmans.

REVIEWS OF THE LATIN AND GREEK BOOKS.

"It is no exaggeration of Mr. FOWLE's merits as an educational author to say that, since the days of Dr. Kerchever Arnold, no such advance has been made in the quality and usefulness of classical school books as that achieved by Mr. FOWLE in the easy series of Latin and Greek manuals which he has published. It was our lot to be the very first to recognise the great and special merit of these works, and we are glad to see," etc., etc.—SCHOOL BOARD CHRONICLE.

"The grand and distinctive merit of these books is the admirable skill with which the author has carefully excluded all the more difficult and advanced matters, and yet has prepared the way for their later acquirement. *This faculty of exclusion and simplification amounts almost to genius.* It requires no little skill to confine every subject within the limit of one or, at the most, two pages, and at the same time to prepare the pupil for the study of larger and more comprehensive treatises, by a perfectly natural and easy growth; and yet this has been achieved by Mr. FOWLE with perfect and unerring skill."—THE SCHOOLMASTER.

"It is impossible to speak in terms of too high satisfaction of Mr. EDMUND FOWLE's 'First Easy Latin Reading Book.'"—JOHN BULL.

"Among those who have lately published excellent working methods for elementary teaching, *one of the highest places ought to be reserved for Mr. FOWLE.* His little book is one of the most striking instances we could find of a thoughtful adult mind making the way easy for the young learner. It is always dangerous to assert an absolute superlative; but it seems to us that this little Latin Reading Book for beginners is one of the best that has ever come into our hands."—QUARTERLY JOURNAL OF EDUCATION.

"The Rev. EDMUND FOWLE's 'Second Easy Latin Reading Book'

(Longmans') carries a step farther the plan of elementary teaching so ably sketched out in his 'Short and Easy Latin Book,' and 'First Easy Latin Reading Book.' Everything, however simple, that the pupil ought to know, is put before him in the plainest and most direct language."—GUARDIAN.

"It is a common complaint amongst tutors that there is a great want of good elementary Greek books. *We do not think they have any further ground of dissatisfaction since the appearance of Mr. FOWLE's most admirable manual.*"—OXFORD UNDERGRADUATES' JOURNAL.

"Mr. FOWLE's earlier educational works have been noticed in our columns with well-merited praise. The volume before us lacks nothing of the striking excellences which marked its valuable predecessors. It is simple in the extreme, very gradual in its steps, clear in expression, and shirks no difficulty. The passages selected are from the purest models of the purest Latinity."—SCHOOLBOARD CHRONICLE.

"The same good work which the Rev. EDMUND FOWLE has done for beginners in Latin by his 'Short and Easy Latin Book' he has now performed for those beginning Greek, in his companion volume, 'A Short and Easy Greek Book.' The arrangement is excellent, and there is the same simplicity and adaptation to the special difficulties of beginners which made Mr. FOWLE's previous work so great a success."—JOHN BULL.

"The early study of the Greek language has many thorny steps, and we think any boy fortunate who has such sedulous care given as is here shown to help him over them. It must be a very idle or a hopelessly stupid boy whom such a system as this would not bring, as old Lily said, 'past the wearisome bitterness of his learning.'"—LITTLE BARY CHURCHMAN.

REVIEWS OF THE LATIN AND GREEK BOOKS—continued.

"This very easy and carefully selected reading book is framed on the model of the author's Latin Reading Book, which we have commended so cordially in our columns. *We speak our fullest conviction of the merits of the work when we declare it to be by far the easiest and most useful introduction to Greek when a pupil has once mastered the rudiments of his Greek Grammar.*"—EVENING STANDARD.

"The author of these books, who is a classical scholar of high attainments, has performed a difficult and important task with complete success, . . . and too much cannot be said in praise of his work. While his books are free from the defects of works of a similar kind, they are marked by striking excellences."—WORCESTER JOURNAL.

"They remain now, as when they were published—the simplest and, in our opinion, the most effective of any classical primer we know."—LITERARY CHURCHMAN.

"The study of language is no easy matter, . . . but some teachers have the gift to lighten the student's labour; and such a man is Mr. FOWLE, who has the ability to clear away difficulties, and thereby smooth the way to the attainment of a thorough knowledge of a language. No one but a practical teacher could do what the author has done; and in this respect his Greek Book

is quite as easy as his Latin."—BRIGHTON GAZETTE.

"It has seldom been our fortune to light upon a Greek Grammar in which economy and retrenchment of space went so thoroughly along with lucidity and solidity of information. . . . A vast amount of thought and pains has been bestowed upon such arrangements of declensions, divisions of a declension, tenses, and tables of verbs, as obviate wearisome repetition and establish a sequence appreciable by the learner."—SATURDAY REVIEW.

"We have examined these books in a somewhat sceptical spirit, fancying that amid the shoals of books of a similar character issuing daily from the press there could be no possible ground for granting them even a conditional welcome; but Mr. FOWLE has converted our scepticism into something like a well-assured and hopeful faith. The first of the two contains a very concise grammar, chiefly valuable for what it does not contain, and at the same time ingeniously putting the information it does contain in the form most adapted for comprehension and retention by the youthful pupil; and this grammar is followed up by some very easy exercises, admirably adapted to the slow and painful steps which can be taken by the child. *The book reveals on every page the experience of one who has not only worked with children, but felt for them.*"—SCHOOLMASTER.

SWAN SONNENSCHNEIN, LE BAS & LOWREY, PATERNOSTER SQUARE.

By the Same Author.

12mo, cloth, price 2s.; free by post 2s. 2d.

Cheaper Edition, boards, 1s., free by post, 1s. 2d.

THE
SCHOOLBOY'S FIRST BOOK
OF
EASY POETRY.

EXTRACT FROM PREFACE.

My objection to nearly all those Books of Poetry which have fallen into my hands is, that there are so few pieces suitable for children, from nine to fourteen years of age, to commit to memory—some are too easy, and some too difficult. I believe that all the pieces in the present selection are of very nearly the same difficulty—not childish, I hope, but at the same time simple in the matter and in the versification.

Another objection to nearly all the selections I have seen is that they contain the same stock pieces—very pretty many of them, and very suitable, but too well known for me to care to give them in my Book. I append a list of many such pieces which will *not be found* in the present publication.

The present book would not do, certainly, to be the only Poetry Book in use in a school, or the younger generation would grow up without knowing many of our old favourites; it is therefore not intended to take the place of books now in general use, but to supplement them.

SWAN SONNENSCHIN, LE BAS & LOWREY, PATERNOSTER SQUARE.

By the Same Author.

SIXPENNY SCRIPTURE MANUALS.

I.

A SHORT BIBLE HISTORY,
For Schools and Families.

II.

THE WANDERINGS OF THE ISRAELITES:
Settlement in Canaan, Government by Judges, etc.
Life of Saul, David, and Solomon.

III.

THE KINGS OF JUDAH AND ISRAËL.
In Parallel Columns.

IV.

SHORT PAPERS ON JEWISH HISTORY.
Giving in connected form the times after the Captivity down to
the destruction of Jerusalem.

V.

THE ACTS OF THE APOSTLES.
Dealing chiefly with the Travels of S. Paul.
*All the above neatly and tastefully bound in cloth, and uniform in
size and price.*

6d. ; free by post 7d.

SWAN SONNENSCHN, LE BAS & LOWREY, PATERNOSTER SQUARE.

By the Same Author.

THE GOSPELS,

HARMONIZED AND ARRANGED IN SHORT READINGS,

Has now been brought out in six separate parts, as

"THE LIFE OF CHRIST,"

In the Author's "Sixpenny Scripture Manuals."

Price 6d. each; free by post 7d.

The *Literary Review* says:

"The idea which suggested the arrangement of the Gospels observed in this book was a very happy inspiration on the part of the industrious editor. The whole work is worthy of the very highest commendation. It will be found most useful by the masters and teachers of schools of all grades, either as a class reading book or for personal use; and for the clergy and students generally, it will prove invaluable as a work of reference."

The *School Guardian* says:

"Mr. FOWLE has the happy art of producing books that are useable, books that one can teach from. Himself a teacher, he has found by experience *what* boys can learn, how they can learn, and how far it is expedient that their teacher should help them, or how far the books they use should be suggestive of help. He has utilised this insight in the preparation of the *Gospels Harmonized*, and has succeeded, perhaps as far as any one ever can, in harmonizing the facts and dates of the four evangelical narratives. We think it will make a capital class-book for the better kind of schools, and will be, as it is designed to be, exceedingly useful to teachers, pupil teachers, and for family reading."

SWAN SONNENSCHN, LE BAS & LOWREY, PATERNOSTER SQUARE.

By the Same Author.

PRICE 6D.; FREE BY POST, 6½D.

HELP TO DEVOTION.

This is a little Book of Meditation, most tastefully got up, with cloth case for the pocket.

There are two separate editions—

- (1) FOR BOYS AT HOME OR AT SCHOOL.
 - (2) FOR THOSE LATELY CONFIRMED.
-

A well-known Literary Clergyman writes: "Many thanks for your attractive-looking and really useful manual for confirmation candidates; kindly send me thirty copies." Others write: "It is one in a thousand. I turned over all — stock last year, and saw nothing equal to it." "It is really a well thought out little matter." "Very many thanks for the little manual so carefully compiled and so beautifully got up." "Send six copies. I like them much, and wish to give them to my confirmation candidates." "Many thanks for your extremely good little Book of Meditations; I am greatly pleased with it. Can they be had by the dozen at any abatement, for distribution in a Parish?" *Three Head Masters of Public Schools* write: "I thank you very much for the charming little book which you inclosed. Are they published?" "I like it exceedingly, and if you will send me twenty copies I shall be glad to give them to some of our *nuper confirmati*." "Thanks for the other attractive-looking little gift. I will draw my masters' attention to it." A London publisher writes: "It is a perfect little gem."

TO BE HAD AT PRESENT ONLY OF
REV. EDMUND FOWLE, AMESBURY HOUSE, BICKLEY, KENT.

Twelve or more copies sent post free.

6



7627

Fowle, Edmund
A new easy Latin primer.

LaL.Gr
F7853n

**University of Toronto
Library**

**DO NOT
REMOVE
THE
CARD
FROM
THIS
POCKET**

Acme Library Card Pocket
LOWE-MARTIN CO. LIMITED

